Course Companion

HSK 6

Every topic handout in one volume

全部专题讲义合集

exercises.lol

Contents 目录

1. Adverbs 3

2. Auxiliary words 117

3. Conjunctions 121

4. Nouns 143

5. Particles 149

6. Prepositions 159

7. Sentence patterns — rhetoric emphasis 166

8. Verbs 187

9. Verb phrases 192

10. "If" statements 196

11. Cause effect statements 200

12. Sentence patterns — formal written 204

13. Let alone... 216

14. Comparing similar adverbs 222

15. Comparing similar nouns 235

16. Say it aloud: argument, summary and formal presentation 240

Adverbs

HSK 6

HSK 6 adverbs are precise and often formal. Some say how things have always been (向来, 一向), some judge an outcome (果然, 偏偏, 似乎), some cover everything (凡是 …… 都, 一律), and some question whether something is needed (何必, 无非). Watch the register: 很是 and 足足 belong to written Chinese, while 倒 and 到时候 are everyday speech.

At a glance

Always and consistently

- **1.** 向来 – always / all along: 他向来很准时，今天没来，肯定有事。
- **2.** 一向 – all along / consistently: 她做事一向很认真。
- **3.** 一再 + Verb – again and again: 妈妈一再提醒他，他还是忘了。
- **4.** 时而 A，时而 B – now A, now B: 山上的天气时而晴，时而下雨。
- **5.** 起初 vs 当初 – at first / back then: 起初我不太习惯，后来慢慢喜欢上了这里。
- **6.** 以往 vs 往常 and 以前 – in the past, as usual: 今年夏天比以往更热。
- **7.** 不时 vs 时而 and 经常 – every now and then: 他一边听，一边不时地点头。
- **8.** 依旧 vs 依然 and 仍然 – still, as before: 十年过去了，这里依旧很安静。
- **9.** 频繁 vs 经常 and 老是 – very frequent: 这台电脑最近频繁死机。
- **10.** 近来 vs 最近 – lately: 近来天气变化很大，大家要注意身体。
- **11.** 一如既往 vs 依旧 and 照样 – as always: 我们会一如既往地支持你。
- **12.** 日益 vs 越来越 and 逐渐 – increasingly: 城市交通日益拥挤。
- **13.** 迄今 vs 截至 and 截止 – so far, as of: 迄今为止，已有五万人报名。
- **14.** 历来 vs 一向 and 从来 – has always: 这所学校历来重视体育。
- **15.** 顶多 vs 至多, 最多 and 至少 – at most: 这件衣服顶多值一百块。
- **16.** 何止 vs 不止 – far more than: 来的人何止一千！
- **17.** 略微 vs 稍微 and 有点儿 – slightly: 今天比昨天略微暖和一些。

Expected, unexpected and uncertain

- **18.** 果然 – sure enough / as expected: 天气预报说下午有雨，果然下雨了。
- **19.** 偏偏 – of all things / just had to: 我们好不容易定了野餐的日子，偏偏那天下雨。
- **20.** 似乎 – it seems / as if: 他似乎有什么心事。
- **21.** 不料 – unexpectedly – written: 我本想早点儿回家，不料路上堵了两个小时。
- **22.** 显然 vs 明显 – obviously vs obvious: 他一直打哈欠，显然昨晚没睡好。
- **23.** 不至于 – it won't come to that: 你复习得这么认真，不至于不及格吧。
- **24.** 终究 vs 终于 and 毕竟 – in the end / finally / after all: 算了，他终究还是个孩子。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- **25.** 恰巧 vs 恰好 – as it happened / exactly right: 我去找他，他恰巧在家。
- **26.** 必定 vs 一定 – surely / must: 只要坚持下去，你必定会成功。
- **27.** 或许 vs 也许 and 恐怕 – perhaps: 他或许已经知道了。
- **28.** 明明 – clearly …, yet …: 你明明知道，为什么不告诉我?
- **29.** 犹如 vs 好像 and 像 …… 一样 – just like: 湖面犹如一面镜子。

All, without exception

- **30.** 凡是 … 都 – all / any without exception: 凡是迟到的学生，都要写说明。
- **31.** 一律 – uniformly / without exception: 门票一律二十元。
- **32.** 再 + Adj + 也 – however …, still …: 工作再忙，她也会回家吃饭。
- **33.** 唯独 – only X – the exception: 大家都到了，唯独他没来。
- **34.** 统统 – all, every single one: 这些旧衣服统统扔掉吧!
- **35.** 归根到底 – in the final analysis: 归根到底，问题还是缺乏沟通。

Degree and amount

- **36.** 很是 + Adj – a formal "very": 居民们对新公园很是满意。
- **37.** 足足 + Amount – a full / as much as: 我们足足排了三个小时的队。
- **38.** Verb + 得 + 倒 + Adj – a pointed note: 你说得倒容易，谁来搬呢?
- **39.** 未免 – rather too – a soft criticism: 一碗面要九十八块，这碗面未免太贵了。
- **40.** 难以 – hard to – formal: 这真让人难以相信。
- **41.** 不止 – more than / not only: 我提醒过他不止一次。
- **42.** 将近 – nearly, just under: 这座桥已经有将近一百年了。
- **43.** 起码 – at the very least: 人家帮了你一整天，你起码应该说声谢谢。
- **44.** 颇, 异常 and 万分 – formal "quite / very": 这本书颇受欢迎。
- **45.** 接连 vs 连续 – in a row: 他接连打了三个电话。
- **46.** 大致 vs 大概 – roughly, in outline: 我大致看懂了这篇文章。

Questioning and looking ahead

- **47.** 何必 – why bother / no need: 何必专门跑一趟?
- **48.** 无非 – nothing but / merely: 他说的无非是堵车、下雨这些理由。
- **49.** 到时候 – when the time comes: 到时候再说吧。
- **50.** 迟早 / 早晚 – sooner or later: 你迟早会明白的。
- **51.** 务必 – be sure to – formal request: 请务必准时参加。
- **52.** 反之 vs 相反 and 否则 – conversely: 经常运动的人身体好；反之，不运动的人容易生病。

Reactions, habits and decisions

- **53.** 不禁 / 不由得 – can't help – a reaction: 听到妈妈的声音，她不禁哭了起来。
- **54.** 动不动就 – at the slightest thing: 他动不动就生气。
- **55.** 索性 – might as well / simply: 雨越下越大，我们索性不走了，再点一壶茶吧。
- **56.** 顿时 – at once – a sudden change: 老师一进来，教室里顿时安静了。

- **57.** 随即 – immediately after that: 他接了一个电话，随即离开了会场。
- **58.** 依次 vs 轮流 and 陆续 – in turn: 请大家依次上车。
- **59.** 大不了 – at worst; no big deal: 别怕，考不好大不了明年再考。
- **60.** 专程 vs 专门 and 顺便 – specially: 他专程来看我。
- **61.** 不惜 vs 舍不得 – whatever it costs: 为了救孩子，他不惜跳进冰冷的河里。
- **62.** 默默 vs 悄悄 – silently: 她二十年来默默地帮助了很多人。
- **63.** 擅自 vs 私自 and 随便 – without permission: 非工作人员请勿擅自进入。
- **64.** 及早 vs 尽早 and 及时 – as early as possible: 有病要及早治疗。
- **65.** 当场 vs 当时 – on the spot / at that time: 警察当场抓住了小偷。
- **66.** 随意 vs 随便 – as you please: 请大家随意参观。
- **67.** 丝毫 vs 毫不 and 一点儿也不 – not in the least: 他丝毫没有放弃的意思。
- **68.** 毫无 vs 毫不 and 没有 – not any at all: 这样做毫无意义。

1. 向来 (always / all along)

Form: subject + 向来 + predicate

- **他向来很准时，今天没来，肯定有事。** *Tā xiànglái hěn zhǔnshí.* – He's always punctual; if he hasn't come today, something must be up.
- **这家店向来以服务好出名。** – This shop has always been known for its good service.
- **我向来不相信这种广告。** – I've never believed adverts like this.

How it works. 向来 *xiànglái* "always, all along" describes a long-standing habit or character, from the past to now. It works with positive and negative predicates, and sounds formal; 一向 is a close synonym.

向来 / 一向	一直	从来
long-term character	continuously over a stretch: 今天一直下雨	mostly with 不 / 没: 从来不迟到

Watch out

- One recent stretch takes 一直: *wrong:* 今天上午向来下雨 → 今天上午一直下雨.



2. 一向 (all along / consistently)

Form: subject + 一向 + predicate

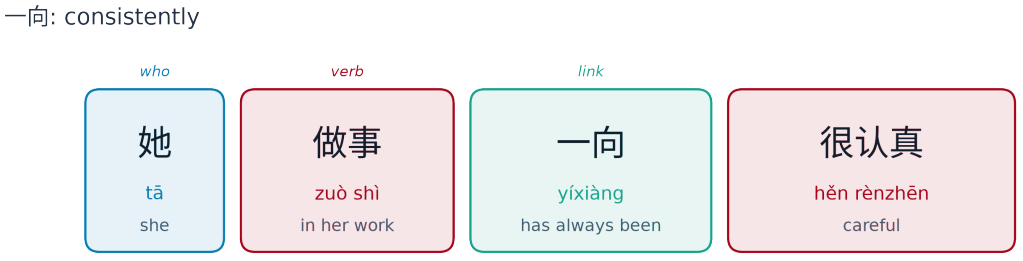
- **她做事一向很认真。** *Tā zuò shì yíxiàng hěn rènzhēn.* – She has always been conscientious in her work.
- **这家公司一向重视质量。** – This company has always valued quality.
- **他一向不爱说话。** – He's never been much of a talker.

How it works. 一向 *yíxiàng* "consistently, all along" describes a habit or character that has held from the past to now. It is a close synonym of 向来, which is a little more formal.

一向	一直
long-term character	continuously (a stretch): 他一直在等

Watch out

- Not "towards": that is 向 on its own (向前走).



3. 一再 + Verb (again and again)

Form: subject + 一再 + verb

- **妈妈一再提醒他，他还是忘了。** *Māma yízài tíxǐng tā.* – Mum reminded him again and again, but he still forgot.
- **会议一再推迟。** – The meeting was postponed again and again.
- **他一再表示感谢。** – He thanked us repeatedly.

How it works. 一再 *yízài* "repeatedly, time and again" usually reports an action repeated in the past, often with insistence (一再强调, 一再要求). It sounds formal; in chat, say 好几次.

一再	再三	屡次
repeated (often past, insistent)	again and again (thinking, asking): 再三考虑	on many occasions (written): 屡次获奖

Watch out

- For advice about the future, 再三 often fits better: 请你再三考虑.
- 一再 gives no exact count.

一再: again and again



4. 时而 A，时而 B (now A, now B)

Form: 时而 A，时而 B · 时而 + verb (sometimes, written)

- **山上的天气时而晴，时而下雨。** *Shān shang de tiānqì shí'ér qíng, shí'ér xià yǔ.* – The weather on the mountain was sunny one moment and rainy the next.
- **他时而看看窗外，时而看看手表。** – He kept glancing out of the window, then at his watch.
- **音乐时而轻柔，时而激烈。** – The music was gentle one moment and intense the next.

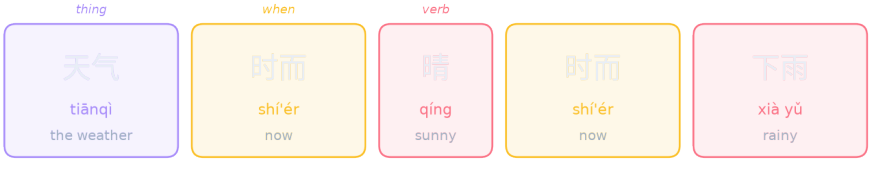
How it works. 时而 A，时而 B shows two different states taking turns again and again. It is written and literary; in speech, say 一会儿 A，一会儿 B. A single 时而 means "sometimes".

时而 … 时而 …	一会儿 … 一会儿 …	开始 … 后来 …
now … now … (written)	now … now … (spoken)	at first … later (a one-time change)

Watch out

- The two states must be different.

时而 A，时而 B: now A, now B



5. 起初 vs 当初 (at first / back then)

Form: 起初 …，后来 / 现在 … · 当初 (looking back at a decision)

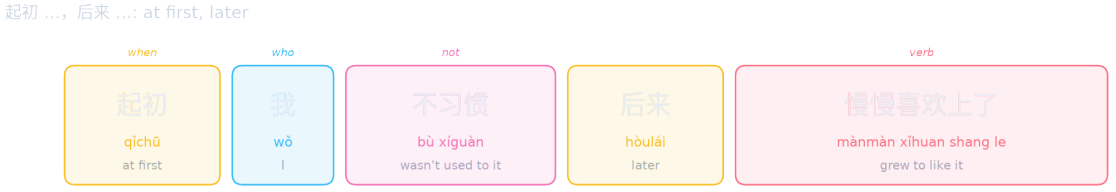
- **起初我不太习惯，后来慢慢喜欢上了这里。** *Qǐchū wǒ bú tài xíguàn, hòulái mànmàn xǐhuan shang le zhèlǐ.* – At first I wasn't used to it, but later I grew to like it here.
- **当初我就应该听你的。** – I should have listened to you back then.
- **你当初为什么选这个专业？** – Why did you choose this major in the first place?

How it works. 起初 marks the first stage of a process that later changed (written; in speech 一开始). 当初 looks back at an earlier time, often the moment something was decided or began, often to compare with now or to regret it.

起初很难，后来容易了	当初就应该听你的	早知今日，何必当初
hard at first, easier later	should have listened back then	if I'd known, I wouldn't have

Watch out

- 起初 needs a later change (后来 / 现在); 当初 looks back at one moment.



6. 以往 vs 往常 and 以前 (in the past, as usual)

Form: 比以往更 … · 与以往不同 · (和) 往常 (一样)

- **今年夏天比以往更热。** *Jīnnián xiàtiān bǐ yǐwǎng gèng rè.* – This summer is hotter than in past years.
- **他往常七点起床，今天却睡到了九点。** – He usually gets up at seven, but today he slept until nine.
- **和往常一样，她第一个到了办公室。** – As usual, she was the first to arrive at the office.

How it works. 以往 = earlier times in general; 往常 = the usual routine. Both are a little written. For "before + event", use 以前.

比以往更热	和往常一样	睡觉以前
hotter than in past years	as usual	before bed

Watch out

- *wrong:* 睡觉以往 → 睡觉以前.



7. 不时 vs 时而 and 经常 (every now and then)

Form: 不时 (地) + verb

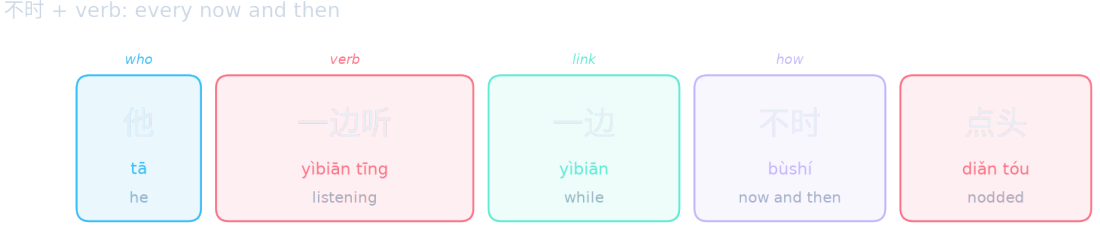
- **他一边听，一边不时地点头。** *Tā yìbiān tīng, yìbiān bùshí de diǎn tóu.* – As he listened, he nodded every now and then.
- **窗外不时传来汽车的声音。** – Every now and then the sound of cars came from outside the window.
- **天气时而晴，时而雨。** – The weather was sometimes sunny, sometimes rainy.

How it works. 不时 describes something that comes back now and then, at irregular moments; it is common in written descriptions. 时而 …… 时而 …… switches between two states. For “often”, use 经常.

不时点头	时而晴时而雨	经常去
nod now and then	sometimes sunny, sometimes rainy	often go

Watch out

- For “often”, use 经常; 不时 is “now and then”.



8. 依旧 vs 依然 and 仍然 (still, as before)

Form: (time or change,) 依旧 + verb / adjective · noun + 依旧

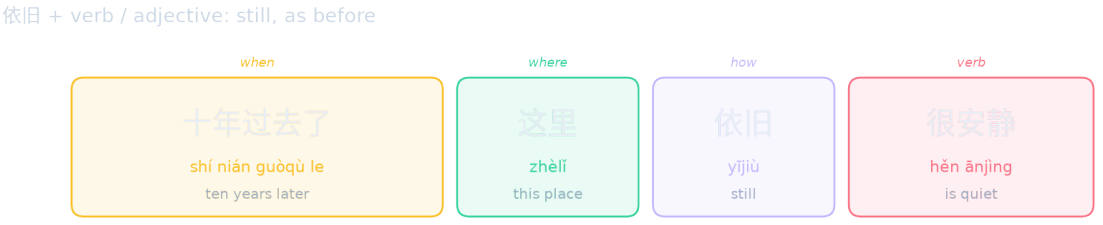
- **十年过去了，这里依旧很安静。** *Shí nián guòqù le, zhèlǐ yījiù hěn ānjìng.* – Ten years have passed, and it's still as quiet here as ever.
- **风景依旧，人却变了。** – The scenery is the same as ever, but the people have changed.
- **他还是那么乐观。** – He's still just as optimistic. (spoken)

How it works. 依旧 = still, as before, after time or a change; it is written. It can end a clause (风景依旧). 依然 and 仍然 are close. In speech, 还是 / 还.

依旧很安静	风景依旧	还是那样
still quiet	scenery unchanged	still the same (spoken)

Watch out

- 依旧 links back to an earlier time, often stated first.



9. 频繁 vs 经常 and 老是 (very frequent)

Form: 频繁 + verb · …… 很频繁

- **这台电脑最近频繁死机。** *Zhè tái diànnǎo zuìjìn pínfán sǐjī.* – This computer has been freezing very often lately.
- **频繁换工作对以后找工作不利。** – Changing jobs too often is bad for finding work later.
- **我的电脑老是死机！** – My computer keeps freezing! (spoken)

How it works. 频繁 = very frequent, often more than normal; it is written and can end a sentence. 经常 = often (neutral). 老是 = keeps (spoken complaint).

频繁死机	经常	老是
freezes very often	often	keeps (doing)

Watch out

- In speech, 老是 or 经常 sound more natural.

频繁 + verb: too often (written)



10. 近来 vs 最近 (lately)

Form: 近来 + situation (written)

- **近来天气变化很大，大家要注意身体。** *Jìnlái tiānqì biànhuà hěn dà, dàjiā yào zhùyì shēntǐ.* – The weather has changed a lot lately; everyone should take care of their health.
- **你近来身体怎么样?** – How have you been lately? (in a letter)
- **我最近要去上海。** – I'm going to Shanghai soon.

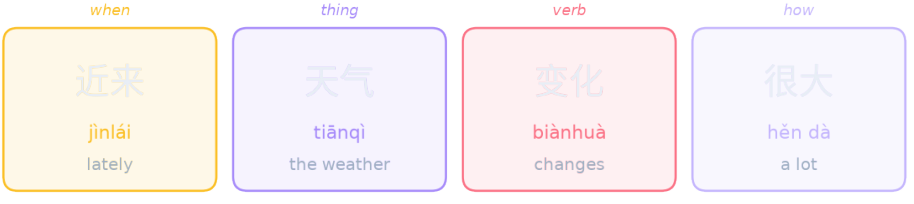
How it works. 近来 = lately, usually a situation over the recent period (letters, reports). 最近 is everyday and can mean recently or soon; use it for single events too.

近来很忙	最近要去	这些天
busy lately	going soon	these days

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我近来要去上海 → 我最近要去上海.

近来 + situation: lately



11. 一如既往 vs 依旧 and 照样 (as always)

Form: 一如既往 (地) + verb

- **我们会一如既往地支持你。** *Wǒmen huì yìrú-jìwǎng de zhīchí nǐ.* – We will support you, as we always have.
- **希望大家一如既往地关心我们。** – We hope you will keep caring about us as before.
- **下雨他也照样跑步。** – He goes running even when it rains. (spoken)

How it works. 一如既往 is a formal set phrase: an action continues just as before (promises, thanks, praise). In speech: 还是像以前一样. 依旧 = still; 照样 = regardless.

一如既往地支持	还是像以前一样	照样跑步
support as always	just like before (spoken)	run regardless

Watch out

- Keep the four characters together.



12. 日益 vs 越来越 and 逐渐 (increasingly)

Form: 日益 + two-character adjective / verb (written)

- **城市交通日益拥挤。** *Chéngshì jiāotōng rìyì yōngjǐ.* – City traffic is getting more and more crowded.
- **随着经济的发展，环境问题日益严重。** – As the economy develops, environmental problems are becoming more and more serious.
- **路上的车越来越多。** – There are more and more cars on the road. (spoken)

How it works. 日益 = increasingly, day by day; written, before two-character words. 越来越 is the everyday form and works with one-character adjectives. 逐渐 = gradually.

日益严重	越来越多	逐渐变暖
more and more serious	more and more	gradually warmer

Watch out

- *wrong:* 日益多 → 越来越多.



13. 迄今 vs 截至 and 截止 (so far, as of)

Form: 迄今 (为止)，… · 截至 + date，… · … 截止

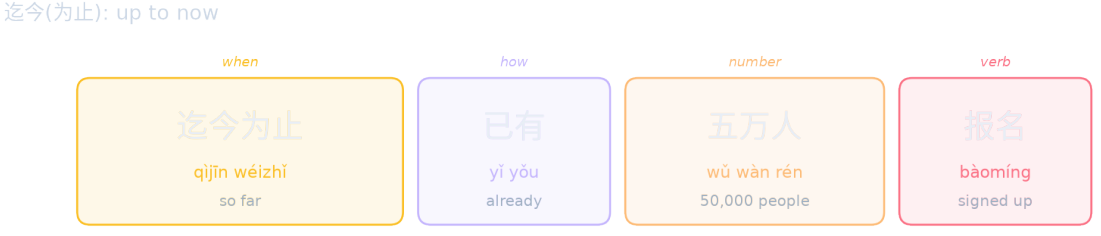
- **迄今为止，已有五万人报名。** *Qìjīn wéizhǐ, yǐ yǒu wǔ wàn rén bàomíng.* – So far, 50,000 people have signed up.
- **截至十月底，报名人数已超过五万。** – As of the end of October, more than 50,000 people had signed up.
- **报名明天截止。** – Sign-ups close tomorrow.

How it works. 迄今 (为止) = up to now (no date needed). 截至 + date = as of that date. 截止 = to close (a deadline). 至今 = up to now / still. Speech: 到现在为止.

迄今为止	截至昨天	明天截止
so far	as of yesterday	closes tomorrow

Watch out

- 截至 (up to a date) ≠ 截止 (deadline).



14. 历来 vs 一向 and 从来 (has always)

Form: 历来 + verb · 历来 (都) 是 + noun (written)

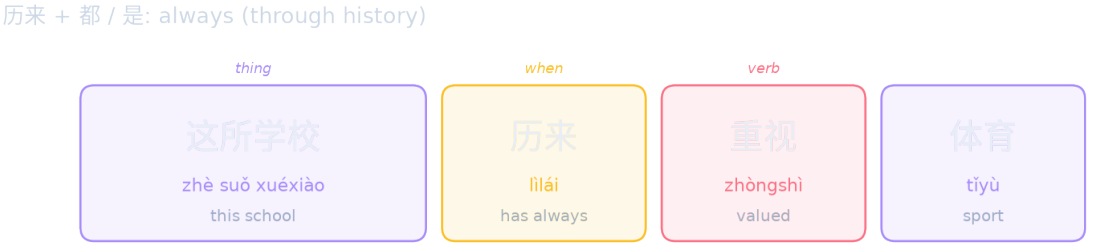
- **这所学校历来重视体育。** *Zhè suǒ xuéxiào lìlái zhòngshì tǐyù.* – This school has always valued sport.
- **中国人历来重视教育。** – Chinese people have always valued education.
- **他一向很准时。** – He has always been punctual.

How it works. 历来 = always, throughout history, for long traditions of places and groups. 一向 = a person's habit or style. 从来 + 不 / 没 = never.

历来重视	一向准时	从来没去过
has always valued	always punctual	never been

Watch out

- For one person's habit, 一向 is more natural.



15. 顶多 vs 至多, 最多 and 至少 (at most)

Form: 顶多 + amount / verb · 至多 (written)

- **这件衣服顶多值一百块。** *Zhè jiàn yīfu dǐngduō zhí yìbǎi kuài.* – This jacket is worth a hundred yuan at most.
- **他顶多是忘了，不是故意的。** – At worst he forgot; he didn't do it on purpose.
- **至少要等一个小时。** – We'll have to wait at least an hour.

How it works. 顶多 = at most, at worst (spoken; makes it sound small). 最多 is neutral; 至多 is written. 至少 = at least.

顶多一百块	至多一小时	至少一小时
100 yuan at most	an hour at most	at least an hour

Watch out

- Don't confuse 至多 (at most) with 至少 (at least).



16. 何止 vs 不止 (far more than)

Form: 何止 + amount / person

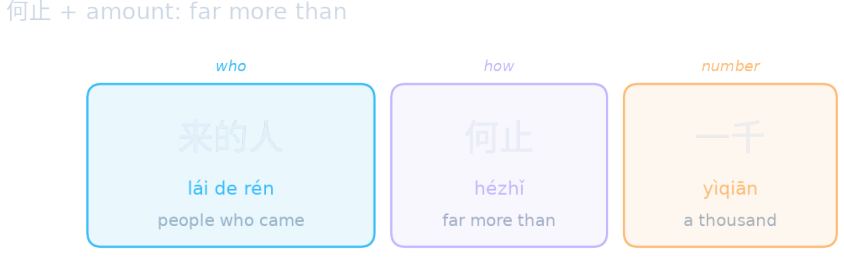
- **来的人何止一千！** *Lái de rén hézhǐ yìqiān!* – Far more than a thousand people came!
- **这本书我何止看了一遍，至少看了五遍。** – I didn't read this book just once – at least five times.
- **来的人不止一千。** – More than a thousand people came.

How it works. 何止 = far more than, not just; it rejects a number or description that is too small. 不止 is the neutral "more than". 至少 = at least.

何止一千	不止一千	至少五遍
far more than 1,000	more than 1,000	at least five times

Watch out

- 何止 rejects something too small; plain "more than" is 不止.



17. 略微 vs 稍微 and 有点儿 (slightly)

Form: 略微 + adjective / verb (+ 一些 / 一点儿)

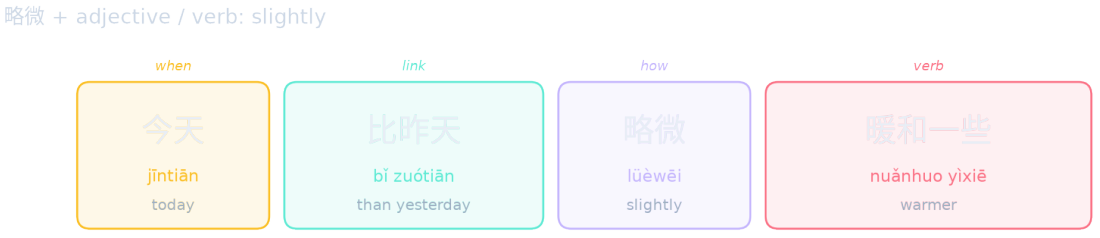
- **今天比昨天略微暖和一些。** *Jīntiān bǐ zuótiān lüèwēi nuǎnhuo yìxiē.* – Today is slightly warmer than yesterday.
- **价格略微下降了一些。** – Prices fell slightly.
- **请稍微等一下。** – Please wait a moment.

How it works. 略微 = slightly (written), often with 一些 / 一点儿 after it. 稍微 is the everyday form. 有点儿 + adjective often complains.

略微暖和一些	稍微等一下	有点儿贵
slightly warmer	wait a moment	a bit too expensive

Watch out

- For complaints, 有点儿 fits; for neutral comparisons, 略微 / 稍微.



18. 果然 (sure enough / as expected)

Form: (expectation …), (subject) + 果然 + result

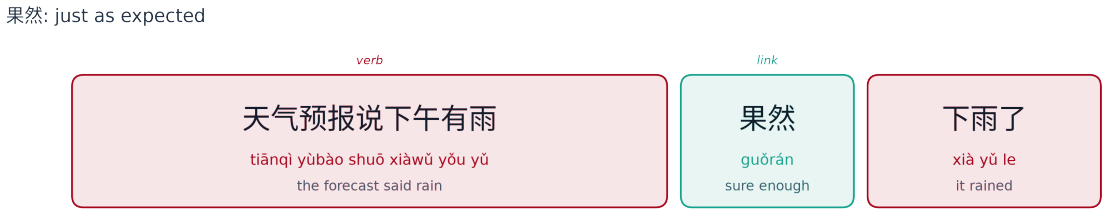
- **天气预报说下午有雨，果然下雨了。** *Guǒrán xià yǔ le.* – The forecast said rain this afternoon, and sure enough, it rained.
- **我就知道他会迟到，他果然迟到了。** – I knew he'd be late, and sure enough he was.
- **大家都说这家的菜好吃，果然名不虚传。** – Everyone said the food here was good, and it really lives up to its name.

How it works. 果然 *guǒrán* "sure enough, as expected" confirms a prediction, warning or reputation that came first. It goes after the subject or at the start of the clause (果然，他来了).

果然	竟然 / 居然
as expected	unexpectedly
他果然考上了	他竟然没考上

Watch out

- 果然 needs an earlier expectation in the context; with none, it sounds odd.



19. 偏偏 (of all things / just had to)

Form: (wish / plan …), (subject) + 偏偏 + unwelcome event · subject + 偏偏 + (要 / 不) + verb

- **我们好不容易定了野餐的日子，偏偏那天下雨。** *Piānpiān nà tiān xià yǔ.* – We finally fixed a picnic date, and of all days it rained.
- **我急着出门，钥匙偏偏找不到了。** – I was in a hurry, and of course I couldn't find my keys.
- **大家都劝他，他偏偏不听。** – Everyone tried to persuade him, but he just wouldn't listen.
- **偏偏是他。** – It had to be him, of all people.

How it works. 偏偏 *piānpiān* marks a clash with what was wanted. Either events go wrong at the worst moment (bad luck), or a person deliberately does the opposite of advice (stubbornness: 让他别去，他偏偏要去).

竟然	偏偏
surprisingly (any surprise)	against a wish or advice, frustrating

Watch out

- With no wish or advice to go against, leave 偏偏 out.



20. 似乎 (it seems / as if)

Form: (subject) + 似乎 + guess · 似乎 …… 一样 (as if)

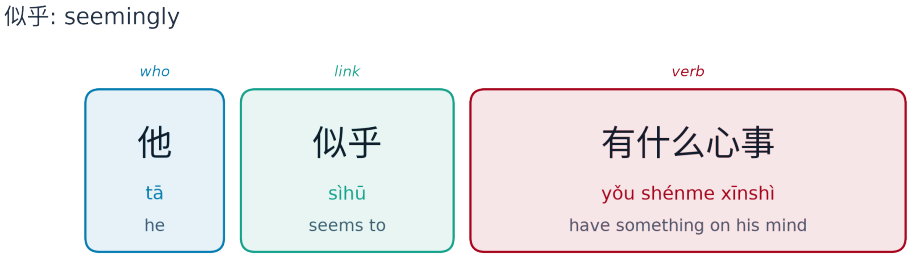
- **他似乎有什么心事。** *Tā sìhū yǒu shénme xīnshì.* – He seems to have something on his mind.
- **问题似乎比我们想的更复杂。** – The problem seems more complicated than we thought.
- **他似乎什么都知道一样。** – He acts as if he knows everything.

How it works. 似乎 *sìhū* gives a tentative impression: a more formal 好像 for writing and careful speech.

似乎 / 好像	看来
it seems (impression)	so it seems (conclusion from evidence)
他似乎不太高兴	他没来，看来是病了

Watch out

- It is soft, so don't combine it with certainty words: *wrong:* 他似乎肯定病了 → 他似乎病了.



21. 不料 (unexpectedly – written)

Form: plan / expectation，不料 + what happened

- **我本想早点儿回家，不料路上堵了两个小时。** *Wǒ běn xiǎng zǎo diǎnr huí jiā, búliào lù shang dǔle liǎng ge xiǎoshí.* – I meant to get home early, but unexpectedly I was stuck in traffic for two hours.
- **他以为考得不错，不料成绩很差。** – He thought he had done well, but his result turned out to be poor.
- **他刚出门，不料下起了大雨。** – He had just stepped out when, to his surprise, it began to pour.

How it works. 不料 tells how a plan or expectation was upset. It starts the second clause, before the subject, and is common in written stories. In speech, say 没想到 or

谁知.

不料他没来	他竟然没来	没想到他没来
unexpectedly, he didn't come (narrating)	he actually didn't come (surprise)	I didn't expect he wouldn't come (spoken)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 他不料没来 → 不料他没来 / 他竟然没来.
- 不料 needs an expectation before it.



22. 显然 vs 明显 (obviously vs obvious)

Form: evidence, 显然 + conclusion · 显然, + sentence · 显然是 …

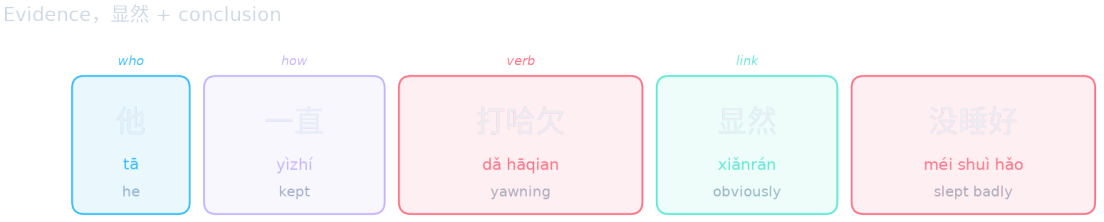
- **他一直打哈欠，显然昨晚没睡好。** *Tā yìzhí dǎ hāqian, xiǎnrán zuówǎn méi shuì hǎo.* – He keeps yawning; he obviously didn't sleep well last night.
- **显然，这个计划行不通。** – Clearly, this plan won't work.
- **这显然是一个误会。** – This is clearly a misunderstanding.

How it works. 显然 gives an obvious conclusion from what you see. It goes before the verb or starts the sentence. To describe a noun or a visible change, use the adjective 明显.

他显然不高兴	明显的变化	他明显瘦了
he's obviously unhappy (a conclusion)	an obvious change	he has visibly lost weight

Watch out

- *wrong:* 显然的变化 → 明显的变化.



23. 不至于 (it won't come to that)

Form: 不至于 + bad result (吧) · 不至于连 … 都 … · 至于吗?

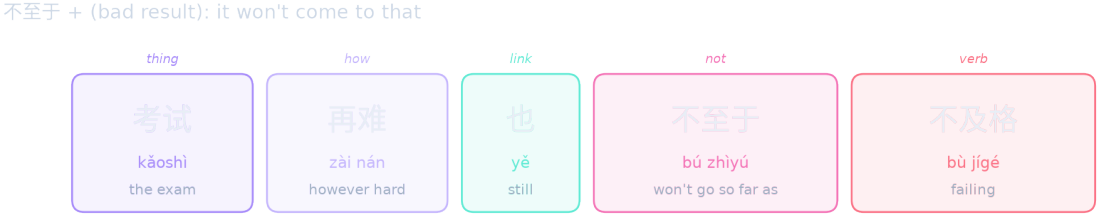
- **你复习得这么认真，不至于不及格吧。** *Nǐ fùxí de zhème rènzhēn, bú zhìyú bù jígé ba.* – You've revised so carefully – you surely won't fail.
- **考试再难，也不至于不及格。** – However hard the exam is, you won't go so far as to fail.
- **他不至于连这点儿钱都没有吧?** – Surely he isn't so broke that he doesn't even have this little money?

How it works. 不至于 reassures: something may be difficult, but it won't reach that bad extreme. It is used about results nobody wants. 至于吗? asks "Is it really that serious?"

不至于失败	不一定成功	以至于睡着了
won't go so far as to fail	won't necessarily succeed	so much that he fell asleep

Watch out

- Only for bad results: *wrong:* 不至于成功.
- 以至于 is different: "so much that".



24. 终究 vs 终于 and 毕竟 (in the end / finally / after all)

Form: 终究 + fact / outcome · 终究还是 + result

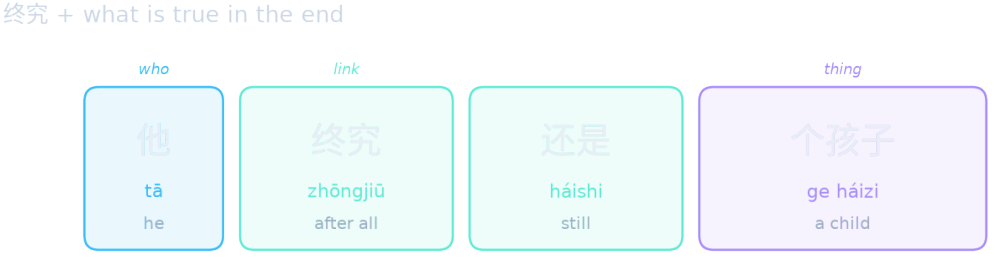
- **算了，他终究还是个孩子。** *Suàn le, tā zhōngjiū háishi ge háizi.* – Forget it – he's only a child, after all.
- **谎言终究会被发现。** – Lies will be found out in the end.
- **他犹豫了很久，终究还是走了。** – He hesitated for a long time, but in the end he left.

How it works. 终究 states what stays true or what happens in the end, no matter what. It is a little formal and often sounds resigned. For a hoped-for success after waiting, use 终于; for a reason to keep in mind, 毕竟 is the everyday word.

终究还是走了	终于买到票了	他毕竟才七岁
left in the end, after all that	finally got a ticket	he's only seven, after all

Watch out

- An excited "at last!" is 终于, not 终究.



25. 恰巧 vs 恰好 (as it happened / exactly right)

Form: 恰巧 + verb (coincidence) · 恰好 (exactly right; also "as it happened")

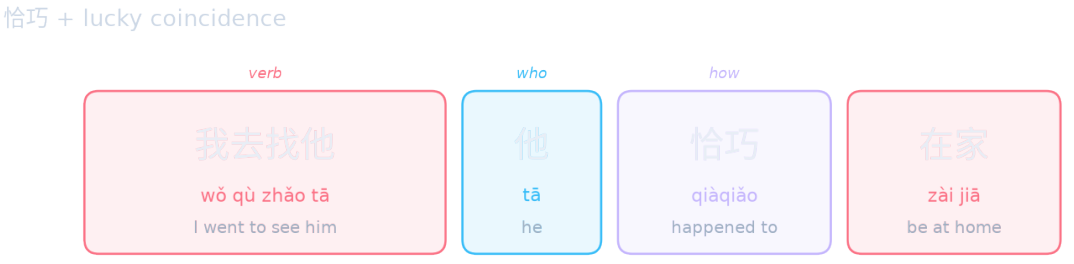
- **我去找他，他恰巧在家。** *Wǒ qù zhǎo tā, tā qiàqiǎo zài jiā.* – I went to see him, and as it happened he was at home.
- **恰巧那天我也在北京，我们就见了一面。** – As it happened, I was in Beijing that day too, so we met up.
- **这双鞋大小恰好。** – These shoes are exactly the right size.

How it works. 恰巧 tells a coincidence: two things met by chance at the right moment. 恰好 means "exactly right" (size, time, amount) and can also mean "as it happened". Both are written; in speech say 正好 / 刚好.

他恰巧在家	大小恰好	正好十点
he happened to be home	exactly the right size	exactly ten o'clock (spoken)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 大小恰巧 → 大小恰好.



26. 必定 vs 一定 (surely / must)

Form: (condition), 必定 (会) + result

- **只要坚持下去，你必定会成功。** *Zhǐyào jiānchí xiàqu, nǐ bìdìng huì chénggōng.* – As long as you keep going, you will surely succeed.
- **这件事必定有原因。** – There must be a reason for this.
- **不保护环境，必定会受到自然的惩罚。** – If we don't protect the environment, nature will surely punish us.

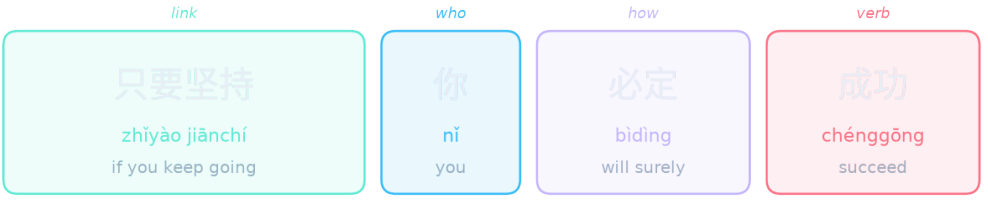
How it works. 必定 gives a confident judgement: something is bound to be true or to happen. It is formal. For requests (一定要来) and "not necessarily" (不一定), use 一定; in everyday speech, 肯定.

必定会成功	你一定要来!	不一定
will surely succeed	you must come!	not necessarily

Watch out

- *wrong:* 你必定要来 → 你一定要来. *wrong:* 不必定 → 不一定.

必定 + certain result



27. 或许 vs 也许 and 恐怕 (perhaps)

Form: 或许 + verb · 或许 at the start

- **他或许已经知道了。** *Tā huòxǔ yǐjīng zhīdào le.* – Perhaps he already knows.
- **换个方法或许会更好。** – Trying another way might work better.
- **恐怕要下雨了。** – I'm afraid it's going to rain.

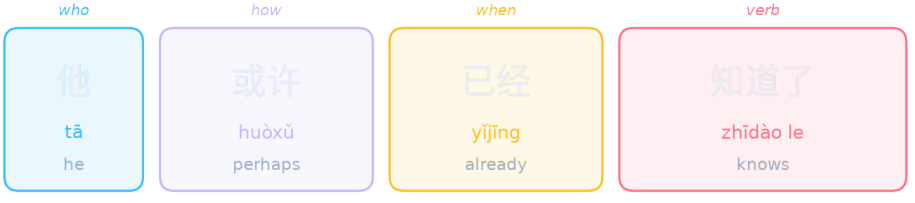
How it works. 或许 makes a soft guess or polite suggestion; it means the same as 也许 but sounds a little more written. 恐怕 guesses something you don't want.

或许你说得对	也许吧	恐怕来不及了
perhaps you're right	maybe (everyday)	I'm afraid it's too late

Watch out

- Not for certain facts: *wrong:* 太阳或许从东边升起.

或许 + soft guess



28. 明明 (clearly …, yet …)

Form: subject + 明明 + fact, (却 / 还 / 为什么) + the opposite

- **你明明知道，为什么不告诉我?** *Nǐ míngmíng zhīdào, wèishénme bú gàosu wǒ?* – You clearly knew – why didn't you tell me?

- **他明明不会，还说自己会。** – He obviously can't do it, but he still says he can.
- **我明明把钥匙放在桌上了，怎么不见了？** – I definitely put the keys on the table – how come they're gone?

How it works. 明明 states a plain fact, and the next part goes against it: a complaint or surprise. For a neutral "obviously", use 显然 or 很明显.

明明知道，却不说	显然失败了	分明
clearly knew, yet said nothing	obviously failed	clearly (written)

Watch out

- 明明 needs a contrast after it.



29. 犹如 vs 好像 and 像 …… 一样 (just like)

Form: A 犹如 B (written) · A 像 B 一样 (spoken)

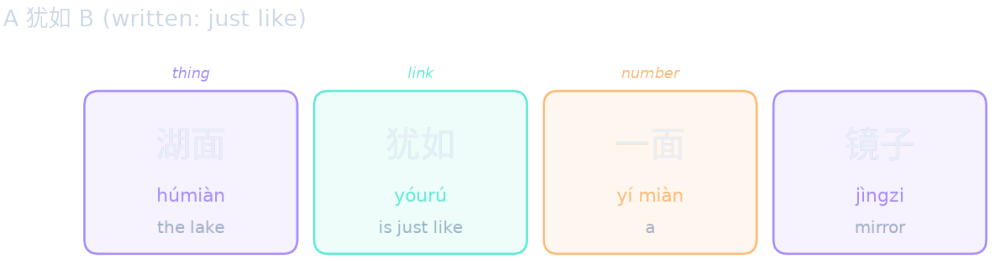
- **湖面犹如一面镜子。** *Húmiàn yóurú yí miàn jìngzi.* – The surface of the lake was just like a mirror.
- **时间犹如流水，一去不复返。** – Time is like flowing water: once gone, it never comes back.
- **他好像生病了。** – He seems to be ill.

How it works. 犹如 makes a written comparison in descriptions and essays; 仿佛 (as if) is also written. In speech say 像 …… 一样. 好像 can also mean "it seems" (a guess); 犹如 is not used that way.

犹如一面镜子	像镜子一样	好像生病了
just like a mirror (written)	like a mirror (spoken)	seems ill

Watch out

- For a guess, use 好像, not 犹如.



30. 凡是 … 都 (all / any without exception)

Form: 凡是 + category (… 的 + noun), 都 + …

- **凡是迟到的学生，都要写说明。** *Fánshì chídào de xuésheng, dōu yào xiě shuōmíng.* – Any student who is late must write an explanation.
- **凡是他答应的事，都会做到。** – Whatever he promises, he does.
- **凡是有问题的，请举手。** – Anyone with a question, please raise your hand.

How it works. 凡是 *fánshì* "every, any … without exception" sets up a whole category, usually with a 的 phrase, and 都 in the main clause applies the rule to all of it. It suits rules and strong generalisations.

所有的学生都 ……	每个学生都 ……	凡是 …… 的学生，都 ……
all the students	each student	any student who …, no exceptions

Watch out

- 都 is required: *wrong:* 凡是学生要参加 → 凡是学生都要参加.
- (请举手 is a request, so 都 can be left out there.)



31. 一律 (uniformly / without exception)

Form: group / items + 一律 + verb / predicate

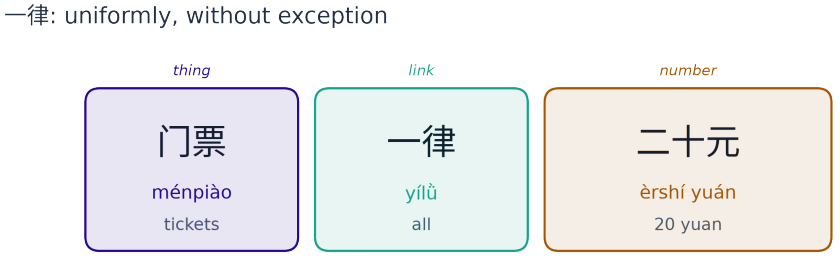
- **门票一律二十元。** *Ménpiào yílǜ èrshí yuán.* – All tickets are twenty yuan.
- **学生一律穿校服。** – All students must wear school uniform.
- **过期的票一律无效。** – Expired tickets are invalid, no exceptions.

How it works. 一律 *yílǜ* applies one rule to every case in the same way. It is formal and typical of signs, notices and policies (一律免费, 一律不退).

都	一律
all (a neutral description)	all, by rule, no exceptions
学生都来了	外卖一律放门口

Watch out

- The group comes first: *wrong:* 一律学生穿校服 → 学生一律穿校服.
- Use 一律 for rules, not plain descriptions.



32. 再 + Adj + 也 (however ..., still ...)

Form: (topic) + 再 + adjective / verb, (subject) + 也 + unchanged result

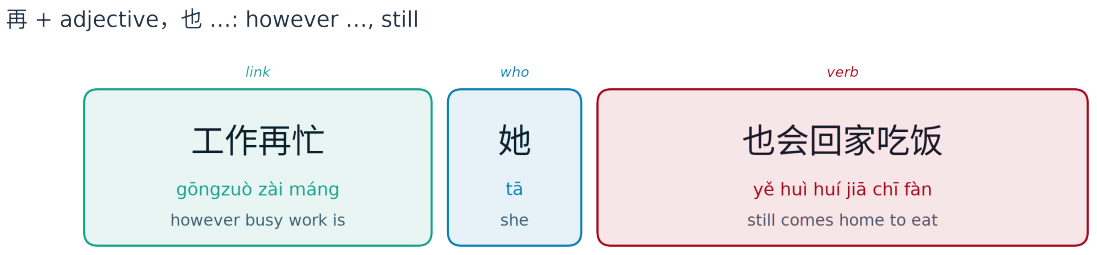
- **工作再忙，她也会回家吃饭。** *Gōngzuò zài máng, tā yě huì huí jiā chī fàn.* – However busy work gets, she still comes home for dinner.
- **再贵我也要买。** – I'm buying it, however expensive it is.
- **你再解释也没用，他不会相信的。** – However much you explain, it's no use; he won't believe it.

How it works. Here 再 means "however much, even more", not "again". Whatever the degree, the result after 也 stays the same. It is very common in speech; 无论 / 不管 + 多 says the same thing more explicitly.

再忙也会来	无论多忙，她都会来
short, spoken	explicit, any register

Watch out

- 也 is required: *wrong:* 再忙来 → 再忙也来.



33. 唯独 (only X – the exception)

Form: group (都) …，唯独 + person / verb …

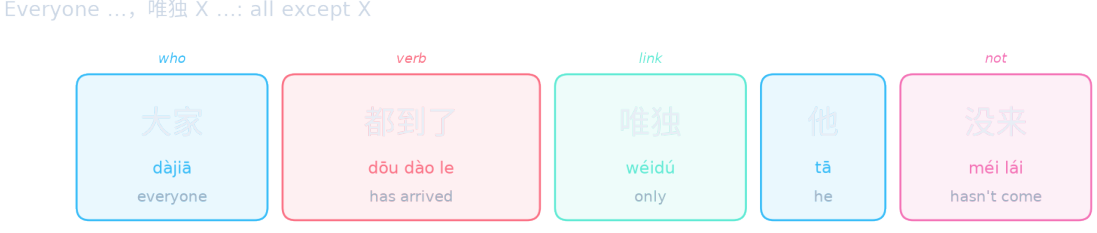
- **大家都到了，唯独他没来。** *Dàjiā dōu dào le, wéidú tā méi lái.* – Everyone has arrived; only he hasn't come.
- **我什么菜都吃，唯独不吃香菜。** – I eat everything except coriander.
- **他什么都不怕，唯独怕打针。** – He's afraid of nothing – except injections.

How it works. 唯独 singles out the one exception: first say what is true for the group, then 唯独 + the one that differs. It is a little formal. For a plain "only" with no contrast, use 只有 / 只.

唯独他没来	只有他知道	除了他以外，大家都到了
only he didn't come	only he knows	everyone except him has arrived

Watch out

- With no group to contrast, say 只有, not 唯独.



34. 统统 (all, every single one)

Form: (group / 把 + things) 统统 + verb

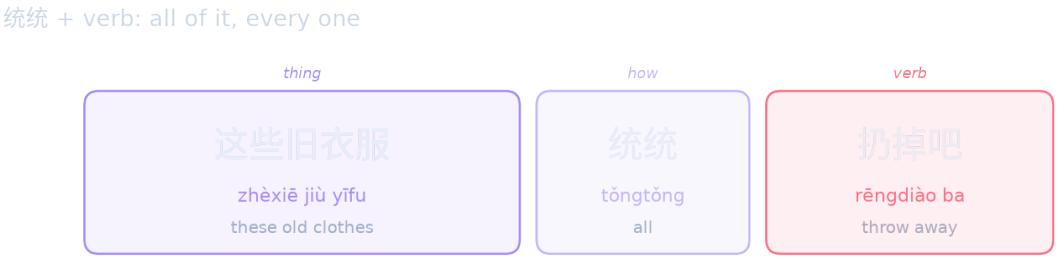
- **这些旧衣服统统扔掉吧！** *Zhèxiē jiù yīfu tǒngtǒng rēngdiào ba!* – Throw all these old clothes away!
- **把桌子上的东西统统拿走！** – Take everything off the table!
- **我说的话他统统忘了。** – He forgot every word I said.

How it works. 统统 means "all, every single one". Like 都 it goes before the verb, but it is stronger and spoken, common in orders and 把 sentences. Before a noun, say 所有 / 全部; in formal writing, 全部 / 都.

统统扔掉	所有人	已全部提交
throw it all away	everyone	all submitted (formal)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 统统人 → 所有人.



35. 归根到底 (in the final analysis)

Form: details …。归根到底 (还是 / 是) + basic cause

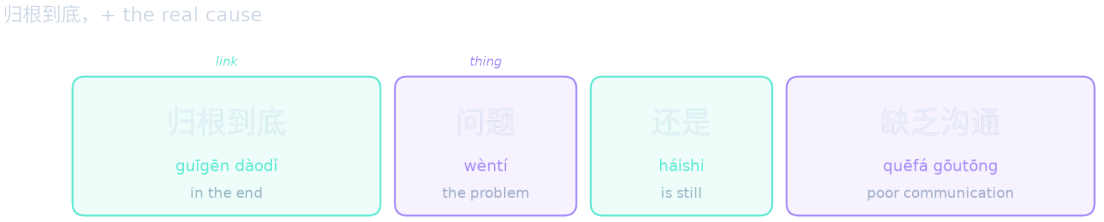
- **归根到底，问题还是缺乏沟通。** *Guīgēn dàodǐ, wèntí háishi quēfá gōutōng.* – In the end, the real problem is poor communication.
- **归根到底，学习还得靠自己。** – In the end, learning depends on yourself.
- **说到底，还是钱的问题。** – When it comes down to it, it's about money.

How it works. 归根到底 (also 归根结底) names the one basic cause or truth after you have listed details. It is written; 说到底 is the spoken version. 总之 just sums up; for time, use 最后.

归根到底	说到底	总之
at root (written)	when it comes down to it	in short

Watch out

- Not for time: *wrong:* 归根到底他来了 → 他最后还是来了.



36. 很是 + Adj (a formal "very")

Form: subject + 很是 + two-syllable adjective / feeling verb

- **居民们对新公园很是满意。** *Jūmínmen duì xīn gōngyuán hěn shì mǎnyì.* – Residents are very satisfied with the new park.
- **老人一个人住，孩子们很是担心。** – The old man lives alone, and his children are very worried.
- **听到这个消息，大家很是高兴。** – Everyone was very pleased by the news.

How it works. 很是 is a literary "very": one unit before a two-syllable adjective or feeling verb. It gives a measured, slightly old-fashioned tone suited to narratives and reports.

很是满意	他是很忙
very (degree, written)	是 for emphasis: he really **is** busy

Watch out

- Prefer two-syllable words: *wrong:* 很是好 → 很是满意 / 很好.
- In conversation, use 很 or 非常.



37. 足足 + Amount (a full / as much as)

Form: 足足 + verb + number + measure word · 足足 + amount

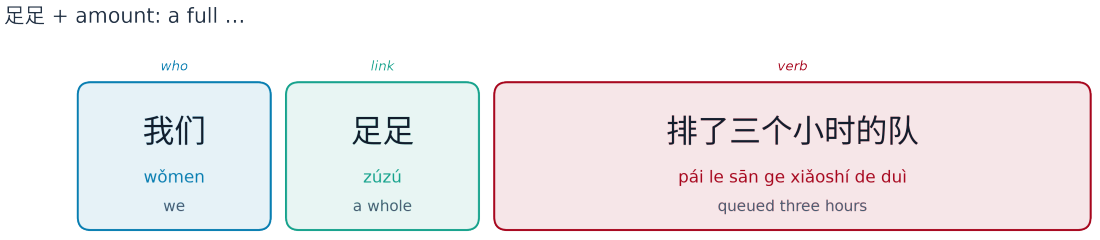
- **我们足足排了三个小时的队。** *Wǒmen zúzú páile sān gè xiǎoshí de duì.* – We queued for a full three hours.
- **他足足比我高了一个头。** – He's a whole head taller than me.
- **这顿饭足足花了五百块。** – That meal cost a full 500 yuan.

How it works. 足足 *zúzú* stresses that an amount of time, weight, money or distance is large: at least that much, more than expected. It needs a number.

足足	整整	才 / 只
a full (large!)	exactly, a whole (complete)	only (small)
足足三个小时	整整一天	才五分钟

Watch out

- *wrong:* 足足很久: give the amount (足足等了两个小时).



38. Verb + 得 + 倒 + Adj (a pointed note)

Form: verb + 得 + 倒 + adjective

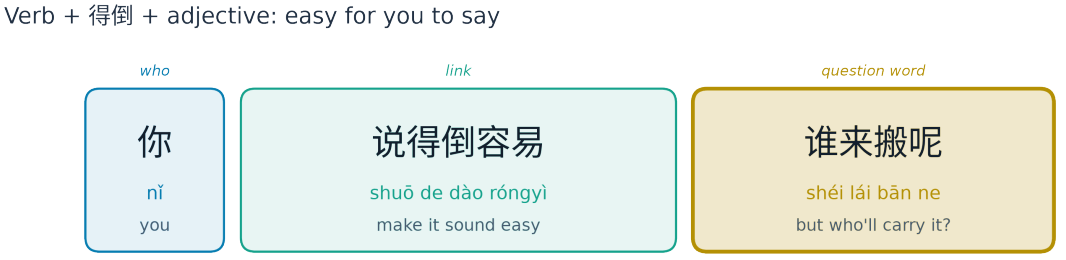
- **你说得倒容易，谁来搬呢?** *Nǐ shuō de dào róngyì, shéi lái bān ne?* – That's easy for you to say. Who's going to do the lifting?
- **他想得倒美，以为不复习也能考满分。** – Dream on: he thinks he'll get full marks without revising.
- **这孩子画得倒不错。** – This child actually draws rather well.

How it works. 倒 *dào* after 得 marks a contrast with what you'd expect. Most often it is ironic: the words or idea sound fine, but reality is different (说得倒轻松, 说得倒好听, 想得倒美). It can also be sincere, meaning better than expected (画得倒不错). Context and tone decide which.

你说得很容易	你说得倒容易
describes how you said it	implies "but it isn't really"

Watch out

- Order: verb + 得 + 倒 (*wrong:* 说倒得容易).
- The ironic use is a jab; avoid it with people you should be polite to.



39. 未免 (rather too – a soft criticism)

Form: subject + 未免 + 太 / 有点儿 / 过于 + adjective

- **一碗面要九十八块，这碗面未免太贵了。** *Zhè wǎn miàn wèimiǎn tài guì le.* – 98 yuan for a bowl of noodles – that's rather too expensive.
- **你这样说未免有点儿不公平。** – Saying that is a bit unfair, don't you think?
- **才学了一个月就想当翻译，未免太着急了。** – Wanting to be an interpreter after one month of study is rather too hasty.

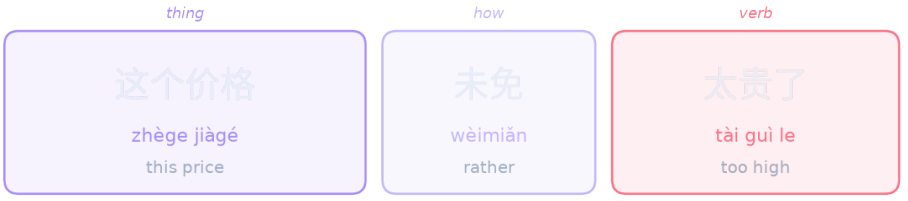
How it works. 未免 gives a soft, polite criticism: the speaker thinks something goes too far. A degree word (太, 有点儿, 过于) usually follows it.

未免太高了	难免紧张	太贵了
rather too high (a judgement)	bound to be nervous (a natural result)	too expensive (blunt)

Watch out

- 未免 ≠ 难免: *wrong:* 他的要求难免太高了 → 他的要求未免太高了.
- In speech, keep the degree word: 未免太可惜了.

未免 + 太 / 有点儿 + adjective: rather too (a judgement)



40. 难以 (hard to – formal)

Form: 难以 + two-syllable verb (相信, 接受, 理解, 忘记, 形容)

- **这真让人难以相信。** *Zhè zhēn ràng rén nányǐ xiāngxìn.* – That is really hard to believe.
- **这个结果让人难以接受。** – This result is hard to accept.
- **那天的风景美得难以形容。** – The scenery that day was beautiful beyond words.

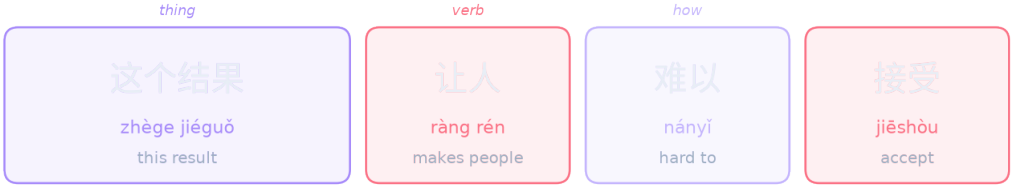
How it works. 难以 is the formal way to say "hard to". It takes a two-syllable verb. In everyday speech, or with a one-syllable verb, use 很难 + verb.

难以理解	很难说	很难吃
hard to understand (formal)	hard to say (speech)	tastes bad (not "hard to eat")

Watch out

- *wrong:* 难以懂 → 难以理解 / 很难懂.
- 很难吃 / 很难看 = tastes bad / looks ugly.

难以 + two-syllable verb: hard to (formal)



41. 不止 (more than / not only)

Form: 不止 + amount · 不止 + person / group

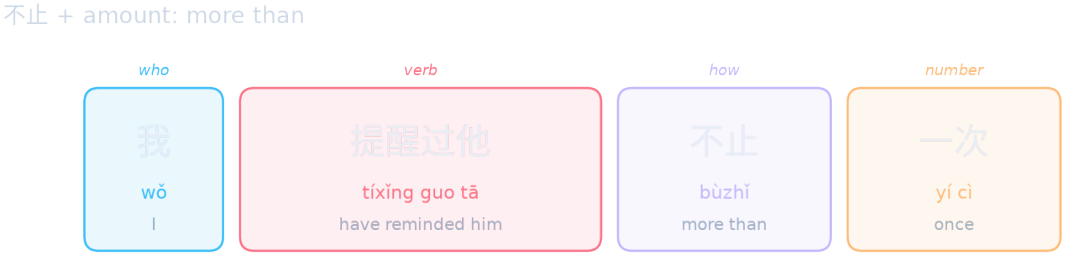
- **我提醒过他不止一次。** *Wǒ tíxǐng guo tā bùzhǐ yí cì.* – I reminded him more than once.
- **他看起来不止六十岁。** – He looks older than sixty.
- **不止他一个人这么想。** – He's not the only one who thinks so.

How it works. Before an amount, 不止 means "more than". Before a person or group, it means "not only". The opposite of 不止 + amount is 不到 (less than).

不止一百人	不到一百人	超过一百人
more than a hundred people	fewer than a hundred	over a hundred (exact, neutral)

Watch out

- 不止 (more than) is not 不到 (less than).



42. 将近 (nearly, just under)

Form: 将近 + amount (time, age, number, part)

- **这座桥已经有将近一百年了。** *Zhè zuò qiáo yǐjīng yǒu jiāngjìn yìbǎi nián le.* – This bridge is nearly a hundred years old.
- **将近一半的学生选了这门课。** – Nearly half the students chose this course.
- **将近十二点了，快睡吧。** – It's nearly twelve – go to sleep.

How it works. 将近 means "nearly": the real amount is a little below the number. It is a little formal. For a little more, use 多 / 不止; for "about" either way, 差不多 / 左右; for "almost" with any verb, 几乎.

将近一百年	一百多年	我几乎忘了
nearly 100 years	over 100 years	I almost forgot

Watch out

- 将近 is always just under the number.



43. 起码 (at the very least)

Form: 起码 + verb / amount · 起码的 + noun · 最起码

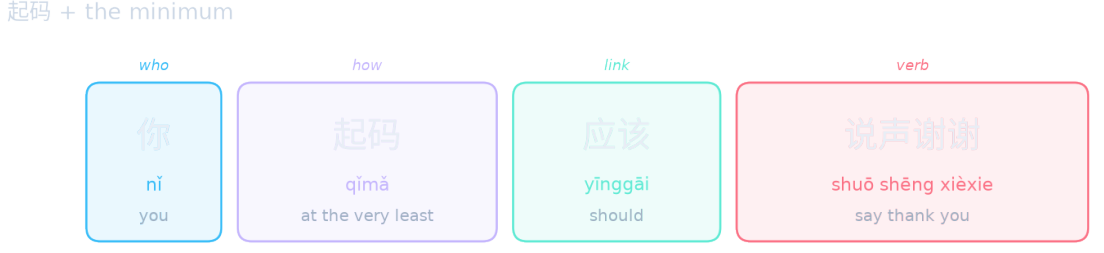
- **人家帮了你一整天，你起码应该说声谢谢。** *Rénjia bāng le nǐ yì zhěng tiān, nǐ qǐmǎ yīnggāi shuō shēng xièxie.* – They helped you all day – the very least you should do is say thank you.
- **从这儿走过去起码要半个小时。** – Walking there takes at least half an hour.
- **这是做人起码的礼貌。** – That's the most basic courtesy a person should have.

How it works. 起码 sets the lowest acceptable amount or action; it is spoken and sounds a little stronger than 至少 (最起码 is stronger still). Unlike 至少, it can describe a noun: 起码的 + noun = the most basic ….

起码要半个小时	起码的要求	至少一个小时
takes at least half an hour	the minimum requirement	at least an hour

Watch out

- *wrong:* 至少的要求 → 起码的要求.



44. 颇, 异常 and 万分 (formal “quite / very”)

Form: 颇 (为) + adjective / verb · 异常 + adjective · 万分 + feeling

- **这本书颇受欢迎。** *Zhè běn shū pō shòu huānyíng.* – This book is quite popular.
- **今年夏天异常炎热。** – This summer is unusually hot.
- **我们万分感谢。** – We are extremely grateful.

How it works. Three written degree words. 颇 = quite, rather; 异常 = unusually (alone: abnormal); 万分 = extremely, mostly with feelings. In speech say 挺 / 很 / 非常.

颇有道理	异常炎热	万分着急
quite reasonable	unusually hot	extremely anxious

Watch out

- 万分 mostly goes with feelings: *wrong:* 万分高.



45. 接连 vs 连续 (in a row)

Form: 接连 + verb (+ number) · 连续 + time / verb

- **他接连打了三个电话。** *Tā jiēlián dǎ le sān ge diànhuà.* – He made three calls in a row.
- **最近接连出了几件怪事。** – Several strange things have happened one after another lately.
- **我们队连续三年得了冠军。** – Our team has won the championship three years in a row.

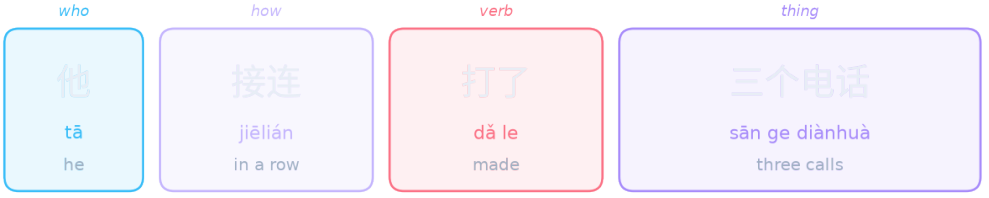
How it works. 接连 describes separate events that happen one right after another, often to you. 连续 = without a break (one activity over time, records). 陆续 = one after another over a period of time.

接连打了三个电话	连续工作十个小时	客人陆续到了
three calls in a row	work ten hours straight	guests arrived over time

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我打算接连学三个小时 → 我打算连续学三个小时.

接连 + verb: in a row



46. 大致 vs 大概 (roughly, in outline)

Form: 大致 + 了解 / 相同 / 分为 … · 大致的 + noun

- **我大致看懂了这篇文章。** *Wǒ dàzhì kàn dǒng le zhè piān wénzhāng.* – I roughly understood this article.
- **两个方案大致相同，只是价格不一样。** – The two plans are roughly the same; only the price is different.
- **他大概不来了。** – He's probably not coming.

How it works. 大致 gives the main outline, not every detail. 大概 is roughly (numbers) or probably (guesses). 基本上 = for the most part.

大致了解	大概不来了	基本上写完了
know roughly	probably not coming	mostly finished

Watch out

- *wrong:* 他大致不来了 → 他大概不来了.

大致 + verb: roughly, in outline



47. 何必 (why bother / no need)

Form: (subject) + (又) + 何必 + verb + (呢)?

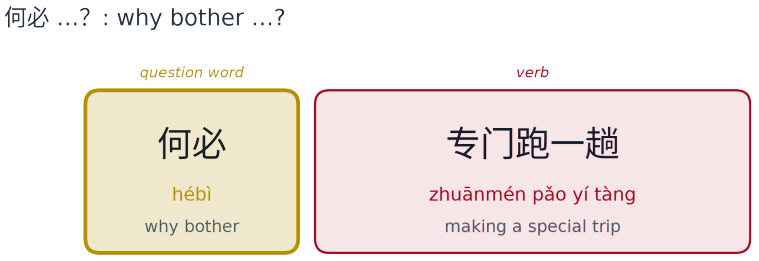
- **何必专门跑一趟？下次见面再给我就行了。** *Hébì zhuānmén pǎo yí tàng?* – Why make a special trip? Just give it back next time.
- **你何必这么客气？** – There's no need to be so polite.
- **既然他不喜欢，你又何必勉强他？** – Since he doesn't like it, why force him?

How it works. 何必 *hébì* "why bother" is a rhetorical question: the answer, "there's no need", is built in. It gently advises against something unnecessary, and 呢 often ends it (何必呢？).

何必担心呢?	你不必担心
rhetorical, softer, persuasive	plain statement: no need

Watch out

- Don't answer 何必 with a reason; it isn't really asking why.



48. 无非 (nothing but / merely)

Form: (what ...) + 无非 (是 / 想) + ordinary content

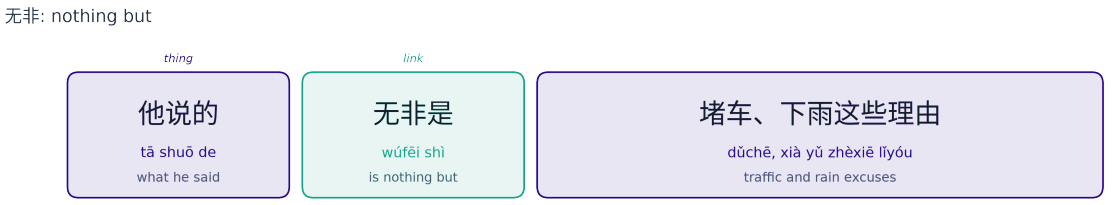
- **他说的无非是堵车、下雨这些理由。** *Tā shuō de wúfēi shì dǔchē, xià yǔ zhèxiē lǐyóu.* – His reasons are nothing but the usual: traffic, rain.
- **大家讨论的无非是两个问题：时间和钱。** – The discussion came down to two things: time and money.
- **他这么做，无非是想引起注意。** – He's only doing it to get attention.

How it works. 无非 *wúfēi* "nothing but, simply" sums something up as no more than the ordinary items named. It is often dismissive. Typical forms are 无非是 and 无非想 / 要.

只是 / 不过	无非
only, just (neutral)	nothing more than (summing up, dismissive)

Watch out

- What follows should be ordinary or limited; 无非 doesn't introduce surprising news.



49. 到时候 (when the time comes)

Form: (future event …)，到时候 + (subject) + action

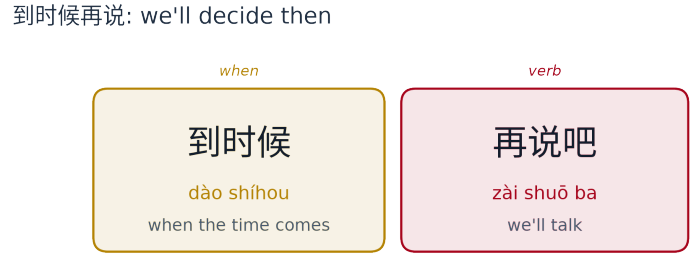
- **到时候再说吧。** *Dào shíhou zài shuō ba.* – Let's deal with it when the time comes.
- **你现在不复习，到时候就来不及了。** – If you don't revise now, it'll be too late when the time comes.
- **下周开会，到时候大家都要发言。** – There's a meeting next week; everyone will have to speak then.

How it works. 到时候 "when the time comes, then" points to a **future** moment that is already known (the trip, the exam, the meeting). It usually starts its clause.

到时候	当时 / 那时候
then (future)	at that time (past)
到时候你就知道了	当时我还很小

Watch out

- The moment must be clear from context; for the past use 当时.



50. 迟早 / 早晚 (sooner or later)

Form: subject + 迟早 / 早晚 + 会 / 要 + verb (+ 的)

- **你迟早会明白的。** *Nǐ chízǎo huì míngbai de.* – You'll understand sooner or later.
- **你天天熬夜，身体迟早会出问题。** – You stay up late every night; sooner or later your health will suffer.
- **别着急，问题迟早能解决。** – Don't worry, the problem will be solved sooner or later.

How it works. 迟早 says something is certain to happen, though the time is unknown. 会 usually follows. 早晚 means the same and is more spoken.

他迟早会来的	他早晚会后悔的	早晚各吃一次药
he'll come sooner or later	he'll regret it sooner or later (spoken)	morning and evening

Watch out

- Future only: *wrong:* 他迟早来了 → 他迟早会来的.



51. 务必 (be sure to – formal request)

Form: (请) 务必 + action · 务必不要 + action

- **请务必准时参加。** *Qǐng wùbì zhǔnshí cānjiā.* – Please be sure to attend on time.
- **出门前务必关好门窗。** – Be sure to close the doors and windows before you leave.
- **请大家务必在周五之前交报告。** – Everyone, please make sure you hand in your reports before Friday.

How it works. 务必 makes a firm but polite request: this must not be forgotten. It is formal and common in notices, emails and instructions.

务必	必须	一定要
be sure to (formal request)	must (a rule)	be sure to (spoken)

Watch out

- "Be sure not to" = 务必不要, not *wrong:* 不务必.
- For a rule, use 必须.



52. 反之 vs 相反 and 否则 (conversely)

Form: condition A → result；反之，→ opposite result

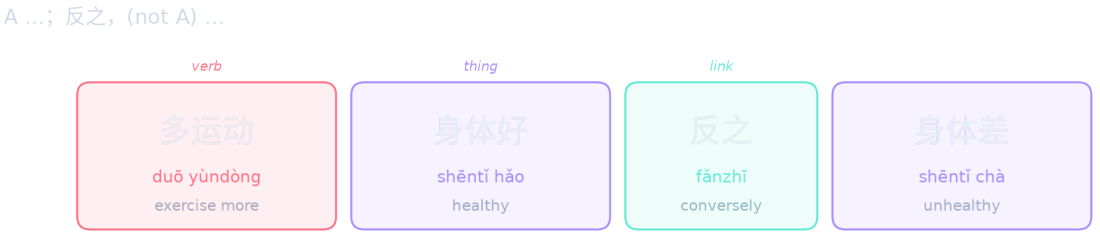
- **经常运动的人身体好；反之，不运动的人容易生病。** *Jīngcháng yùndòng de rén shēntǐ hǎo; fǎnzhī, bú yùndòng de rén róngyì shēngbìng.* – People who exercise often are healthy; conversely, people who don't get ill easily.
- **价格低，买的人就多；反之，买的人就少。** – When prices are low, many people buy; when they aren't, few do.
- **他没生气，相反，他很高兴。** – He wasn't angry – on the contrary, he was very happy.

How it works. 反之 states what happens in the opposite case, in formal writing. 相反 = on the contrary (the reality is the opposite). 否则 / 要不然 = otherwise (a warning).

反之	相反	否则 / 要不然
conversely	on the contrary	otherwise

Watch out

- 反之 is written; in speech, say the opposite case in full (不运动就 ……).



53. 不禁 / 不由得 (can't help – a reaction)

Form: trigger, subject + 不禁 / 不由得 + reaction

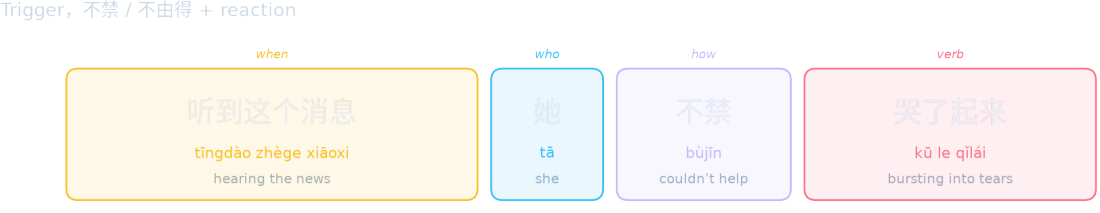
- **听到妈妈的声音，她不禁哭了起来。** *Tīngdào māma de shēngyīn, tā bùjīn kūle qǐlái.* – Hearing her mother's voice, she couldn't help bursting into tears.
- **看到这张老照片，我不禁想起了小时候。** – Seeing this old photo, I couldn't help remembering my childhood.
- **他说得那么认真，不由得你不信。** – He said it so seriously that you couldn't help believing him.

How it works. 不禁 and 不由得 describe a feeling or reaction someone could not hold back. The trigger comes first. They are written style; 忍不住 is the spoken word and also works for the future.

她不禁笑了	我怕我会忍不住笑
she couldn't help laughing (what happened)	I'm afraid I'll laugh (future: 忍不住)

Watch out

- Not for plans or orders: *wrong:* 明天我不禁去.
- After the subject: *wrong:* 不禁她笑了 → 她不禁笑了.



54. 动不动就 (at the slightest thing)

Form: subject + 动不动 + 就 + verb

- **他动不动就生气。** *Tā dòngbudòng jiù shēngqì.* – He gets angry at the slightest thing.
- **这孩子动不动就哭。** – This child cries at the slightest thing.
- **现在的年轻人动不动就换工作。** – Young people these days change jobs at the drop of a hat.

How it works. 动不动就 complains that something happens too easily and too often. 就 always follows 动不动.

他动不动就迟到	他总是迟到	他经常帮助别人
late at the slightest excuse (annoyed)	always late	often helps others (a good habit)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 他动不动迟到 → 他动不动就迟到.
- Not for good habits: use 经常.



55. 索性 (might as well / simply)

Form: reason, subject + 索性 + action

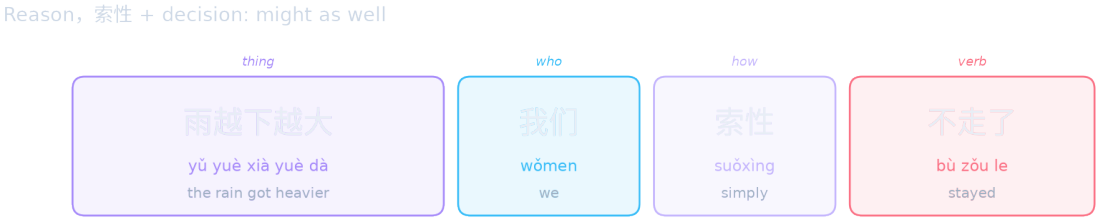
- **雨越下越大，我们索性不走了。** *Yǔ yuè xià yuè dà, wǒmen suǒxìng bù zǒu le.* – The rain kept getting heavier, so we just stayed.
- **既然已经迟到了，我索性不去了。** – Since I'm already late, I might as well not go at all.
- **这台电脑老是坏，索性买台新的吧。** – This computer keeps breaking – let's just buy a new one.

How it works. 索性 marks a clear-cut decision after a frustrating situation, often going all the way instead of a half-measure. 干脆 means the same and is more spoken.

索性不去了	干脆打车吧	他很干脆
might as well not go (written)	let's just take a taxi (spoken)	he's straightforward (only 干脆)

Watch out

- 索性 goes before an action, not an adjective: *wrong:* 我索性很累.
- The reason comes first.



56. 顿时 (at once – a sudden change)

Form: event，(subject) 顿时 + change of state or feeling

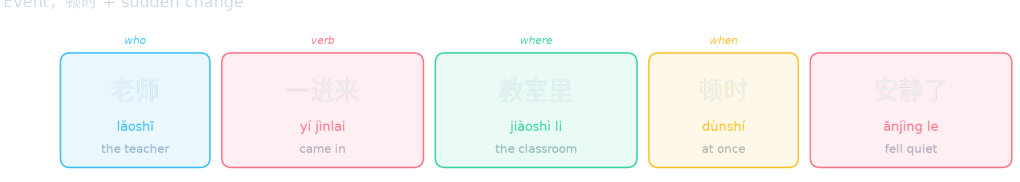
- **老师一进来，教室里顿时安静了。** *Lǎoshī yí jìnlai, jiàoshì li dùnshí ānjìng le.* – The moment the teacher came in, the classroom went quiet.
- **听了这句话，他顿时明白了。** – When he heard this, he understood at once.
- **听到这个好消息，大家顿时高兴得跳了起来。** – Hearing the good news, everyone jumped for joy at once.

How it works. 顿时 tells how a scene or feeling changed immediately after an event. It is written and describes what happened, so it never gives an order or a plan (use 立刻). For a surprise with no cause before it, use 忽然.

顿时安静了	你立刻过来!	电话忽然响了
went quiet at once	come here right now!	the phone suddenly rang

Watch out

- *wrong:* 你顿时过来 → 你立刻过来.



57. 随即 (immediately after that)

Form: action 1 (后 / 了), 随即 + action 2

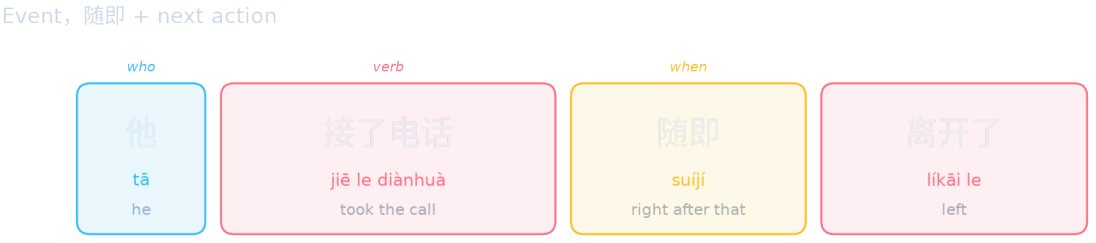
- **他接了一个电话，随即离开了会场。** *Tā jiē le yí ge diànhuà, suíjí líkāi le huìchǎng.* – He took a phone call and left the meeting right after.
- **比赛结束后，记者随即采访了冠军。** – After the match, reporters interviewed the winner straight away.
- **消息公布后，网上随即出现了很多评论。** – As soon as the news came out, lots of comments appeared online.

How it works. 随即 joins two actions in a written story or report: the second follows the first at once. It can't give an order (use 立即). 随后 means "afterwards, a little later".

随即离开了	请立即离开	我们随后就到
left right after	please leave immediately	we'll be there shortly

Watch out

- *wrong:* 请随即离开 → 请立即离开.



58. 依次 vs 轮流 and 陆续 (in turn)

Form: 依次 + verb · A、B、C 依次是 …

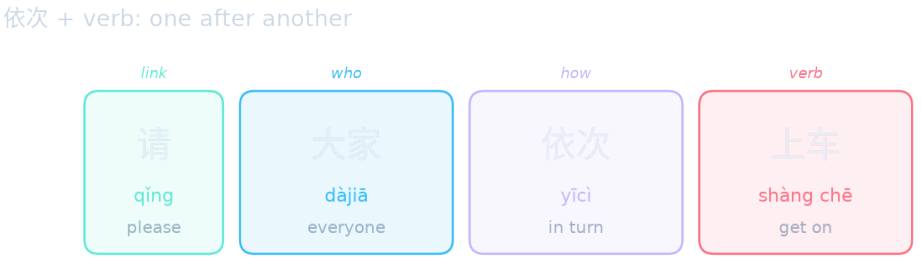
- **请大家依次上车。** *Qǐng dàjiā yīcì shàng chē.* – Please get on the bus one by one, in order.
- **他依次介绍了三个方案。** – He presented the three plans one by one.
- **获得前三名的依次是小王、小李和小张。** – First, second and third went to Xiao Wang, Xiao Li and Xiao Zhang.

How it works. 依次 means "in turn, in a fixed order"; it is formal (notices, reports). 轮流 = take turns (each person in turn); 陆续 = one after another at different times. In speech: 一个一个地 / 按顺序.

依次上车	轮流做饭	陆续到了
board in turn	take turns cooking	arrived one after another

Watch out

- 依次 (yīcì, in turn) ≠ 一次 (yí cì, once).



59. 大不了 (at worst; no big deal)

Form: (if …,) 大不了 + worst case · 没什么大不了的

- **考不好大不了明年再考。** *Kǎo bù hǎo dàbuliǎo míngnián zài kǎo.* – If it goes badly, at worst you can take it again next year.
- **没赶上车也没关系，大不了打车去。** – It doesn't matter if we miss the bus – at worst we'll take a taxi.
- **这有什么大不了的?** – What's the big deal?

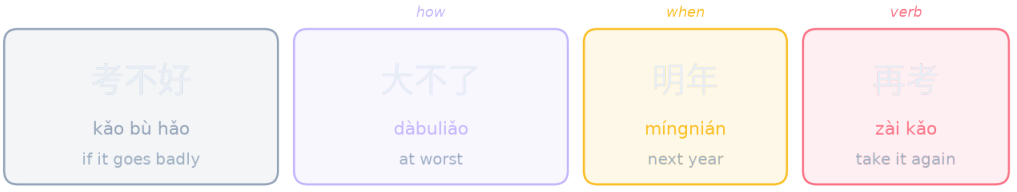
How it works. 大不了 names the worst result and makes it sound acceptable, to calm someone. As an adjective it means "a big deal", mostly in 没什么大不了的. It is casual speech. 最多 = at most (a limit).

大不了再考	没什么大不了的	最多十分钟
at worst, take it again	no big deal	ten minutes at most

Watch out

- For a number limit, use 最多, not 大不了.

大不了 + the worst case



60. 专程 vs 专门 and 顺便 (specially)

Form: 专程 + 来 / 去 / 到 + purpose · 顺便 + extra action

- **他专程来看我。** *Tā zhuānchéng lái kàn wǒ.* – He came specially to see me.
- **我们专程去杭州看西湖。** – We went to Hangzhou specially to see West Lake.
- **我去超市，顺便帮你买点儿水果。** – I'm going to the supermarket – I'll get you some fruit while I'm there.

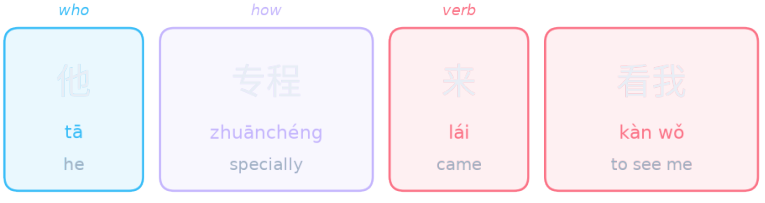
How it works. 专程 says a trip was made for this purpose; it shows the effort made. 专门 = specially, for any action. 顺便 = an extra job because you're going anyway.

专程来看我	专门做了蛋糕	顺便买水果
came specially to see me	made a cake specially	buy fruit on the way

Watch out

- *wrong:* 专程做蛋糕 → 专门做蛋糕.

专程 + 来 / 去 + purpose



61. 不惜 vs 舍不得 (whatever it costs)

Form: (为了 + goal,) 不惜 + cost · 不惜一切代价

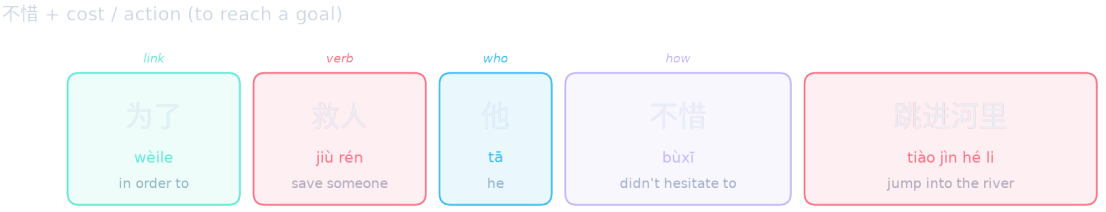
- **为了救孩子，他不惜跳进冰冷的河里。** *Wèile jiù háizi, tā bùxī tiào jìn bīnglěng de hé li.* – To save the child, he didn't hesitate to jump into the icy river.
- **我们会不惜一切代价完成任务。** – We will finish the task at any cost.
- **他舍不得花钱。** – He can't bear to spend money.

How it works. 不惜 says someone accepts a real price (money, time, danger) to reach a goal; with bad behaviour it criticises (不惜说谎). 舍不得 is the opposite feeling: can't bear to give something up.

不惜花很多钱	不惜一切代价	舍不得扔
spend a lot, whatever it takes	at any cost	can't bear to throw away

Watch out

- The cost after 不惜 must be real.



62. 默默 vs 悄悄 (silently)

Form: 默默 (地) + verb · 默默无闻

- **她二十年来默默地帮助了很多人。** *Tā èrshí nián lái mòmò de bāngzhù le hěn duō rén.* – For twenty years she has quietly helped many people.
- **他默默地看着窗外，什么也没说。** – He stared silently out of the window and said nothing.
- **他悄悄地走进教室。** – He slipped quietly into the classroom.

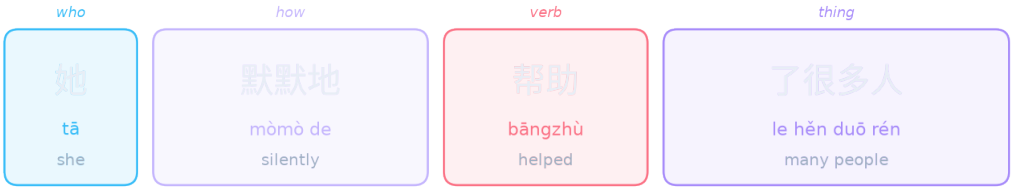
How it works. 默默 = silently, without words or asking for thanks: praise for quiet effort, or feelings kept inside. 悄悄 = so others don't notice. 默默无闻 = unsung.

默默地帮助	悄悄地走进来	默默无闻
help without a word	come in unnoticed	unsung

Watch out

- To avoid being noticed, use 悄悄.

默默(地) + verb: quietly, without words



63. 擅自 vs 私自 and 随便 (without permission)

Form: (请勿 / 不得 / 禁止 +) 擅自 + verb

- **非工作人员请勿擅自进入。** *Fēi gōngzuò rényuán qǐng wù shànzì jìnrù.* – Non-staff: do not enter without permission.
- **他没有请假，擅自离开了公司。** – He didn't ask for leave; he left the office without permission.
- **随便坐吧！** – Sit wherever you like!

How it works. 擅自 criticises doing something without the permission you needed; it is common in signs and rules. 私自 = privately, without asking (often secretly). 随便 = as you like (friendly).

请勿擅自进入	私自拿走	随便坐
no entry without permission	take secretly	sit anywhere

Watch out

- *wrong:* 擅自坐吧 → 随便坐吧.

擅自 + verb: without permission



64. 及早 vs 尽早 and 及时 (as early as possible)

Form: 及早 + 治疗 / 发现 / 解决 · 请尽早 + verb

- **有病要及早治疗。** *Yǒu bìng yào jízǎo zhìliáo.* – If you're ill, get treatment as early as possible.
- **请尽早回复。** – Please reply as soon as possible.
- **幸亏救护车来得及时。** – Luckily the ambulance came in time.

How it works. 及早 = early, before it's too late (advice, warnings). 尽早 = as soon as possible (polite requests). 及时 = in time, at the right moment.

及早治疗	尽早回复	来得及时
treat early	reply ASAP	came in time

Watch out

- *wrong:* 来得及早 → 来得及时.



65. 当场 vs 当时 (on the spot / at that time)

Form: 当场 + verb

- **警察当场抓住了小偷。** *Jǐngchá dāngchǎng zhuā zhù le xiǎotōu.* – The police caught the thief on the spot.
- **评委当场宣布了比赛结果。** – The judges announced the result on the spot.
- **当时我还在上大学。** – At that time I was still at university.

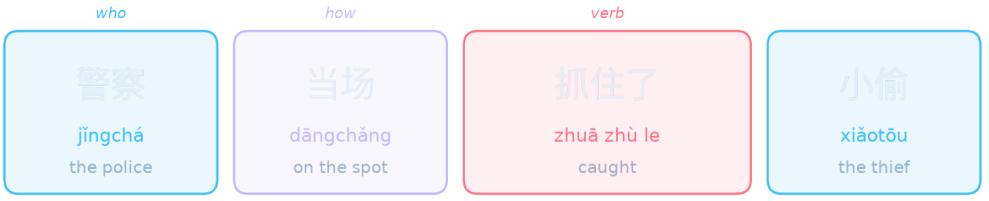
How it works. 当场 joins place and time: right there, at once, as part of an event (common in reports). 当时 = at that (past) time. 马上 = right away.

当场抓住	当时	马上
caught on the spot	at that time	right away

Watch out

- *wrong:* 当场我还在上大学 → 当时我还在上大学.

当场 + verb: on the spot



66. 随意 vs 随便 (as you please)

Form: 请随意 (+ verb) · 不要 / 请勿随意 + verb

- **请大家随意参观。** *Qǐng dàjiā suíyì cānguān.* – Please feel free to look around.
- **请勿随意触摸展品。** – Please don't touch the exhibits without permission.
- **吃什么都行，随便。** – Anything is fine, I don't mind. (spoken)

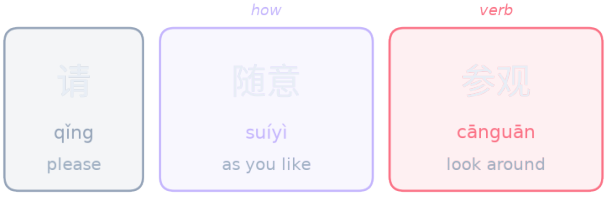
How it works. 随意 is a polite, slightly formal "as you please" for hosts and notices; with 不要 / 请勿 it warns against careless actions. 随便 is the everyday word (whatever, anything, careless). 自由 = free.

请随意	请勿随意触摸	随便
help yourselves	don't touch	whatever, anything

Watch out

- 随便 can sound too casual in a formal invitation.

随意 + verb: as you please



67. 丝毫 vs 毫不 and 一点儿也不 (not in the least)

Form: 丝毫 + 不 / 没 (有) · 没有丝毫 + noun · 毫不 + two-character word

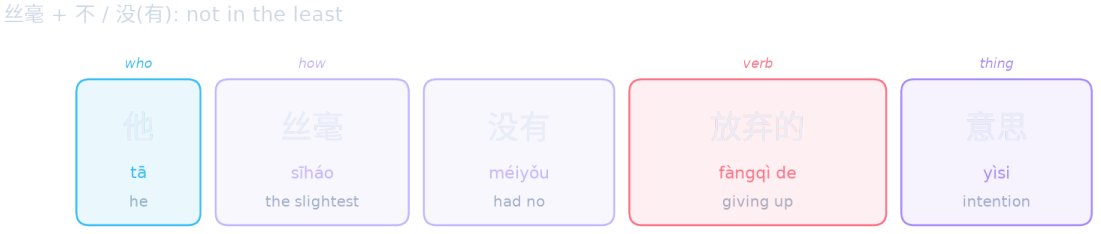
- **他丝毫没有放弃的意思。** *Tā sīháo méiyǒu fàngqì de yìsi.* – He showed no sign at all of giving up.
- **她毫不犹豫地答应了。** – She agreed without the slightest hesitation.
- **我一点儿也不累。** – I'm not tired at all. (spoken)

How it works. 丝毫 = the slightest bit, used with a negative. 毫不 already contains 不 and goes before two-character words (犹豫, 在乎). In speech: 一点儿也不.

丝毫没有	毫不犹豫	一点儿也不
not in the least	without hesitation	not at all (spoken)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 毫不不犹豫 → 毫不犹豫.



68. 毫无 vs 毫不 and 没有 (not any at all)

Form: 毫无 + noun (formal)

- **这样做毫无意义。** *Zhèyàng zuò háowú yìyì.* – Doing this is completely pointless.
- **毫无疑问，这是最好的选择。** – Without any doubt, this is the best choice.
- **她毫不犹豫地答应了。** – She agreed without hesitation.

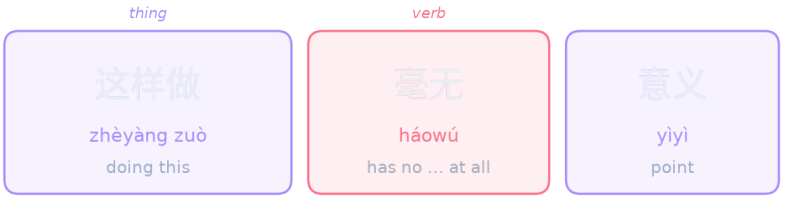
How it works. 毫无 = not have any … at all, before nouns (意义, 办法, 准备, 疑问). 毫不 goes before verbs and adjectives. Speech: 一点儿 …… 也没有.

毫无意义	毫无疑问	毫不犹豫
pointless	without doubt	without hesitation

Watch out

- 毫无 + noun; 毫不 + verb or adjective.

毫无 + two-character noun: not any at all



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 向来 (always / all along)

1. Complete: "He has always been very frugal." 他 …… 很节约。

2. "It's been raining all day." Which fits?

- A. 今天向来不下雨。
- B. 今天从来下雨。
- C. 今天向来下雨。
- D. 今天一直下雨。

3. Build: "I've never believed adverts like this."

Put in order: 这种广告。 / 向来 / 不相信 / 我

4. True or false? 向来 can be used with both positive and negative predicates. If false, correct it.

5. Your colleague has never been late in ten years. Use 向来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 一向 (all along / consistently)

6. Complete: "He has always been very punctual." 他 …… 很准时。

7. "He has been waiting the whole time." Which fits?

- A. 他一向在等。
- B. 他一向等了。
- C. 他向来在等着。
- D. 他一直在等。

8. Build: "This company has always valued quality."

Put in order: 质量。 / 一向 / 这家公司 / 重视

9. True or false? 一向 and 向来 are close synonyms. If false, correct it.

10. Your colleague has always double-checked every document, ever since she joined. Use 一向. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 一再 + Verb (again and again)

11. Complete: "The doctor repeatedly told him to rest." 医生 …… 叮嘱他多休息。

12. Which sounds most natural in casual chat? "I told him several times."

- A. 我跟他说了好几次。
- B. 我再三他告诉。
- C. 我屡次告诉他。
- D. 我一再告诉他。

13. Build: "The meeting was postponed again and again."

Put in order: 一再 / 推迟。/ 会议

14. True or false? 一再 often carries a sense of insistence. If false, correct it.

15. Your brother kept forgetting his keys even though everyone reminded him. Use 一再 + Verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 时而 A，时而 B (now A, now B)

16. Complete: "The weather was sunny one moment and rainy the next." 天气时而晴，…… 下雨。

17. Build: "The music was gentle one moment and intense the next."

Put in order: 激烈。/ 时而 / 时而轻柔，/ 音乐

18. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 孩子哭时而，笑时而。
- B. 孩子时而哭，时而哭。
- C. 孩子时而哭，时而笑。

19. In everyday speech, which is most natural for "now sunny, now rainy"?

- A. 天气时而晴，时而下雨。
- B. 天气一会儿晴，一会儿下雨。

20. True or false? A single 时而 can mean "sometimes" in writing. If false, correct it.

21. Write two sentences for a story describing a nervous person waiting for exam results. Use 时而 … 时而 … once. Use 时而 A，时而 B. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 起初 vs 当初 (at first / back then)

22. Complete: "At first I wasn't used to it, but later I grew to like it here." …… 我不太习惯，后来慢慢喜欢上了这里。

23. Complete: "I should have listened to you back then." …… 我就应该听你的。

24. "Why did you choose this major in the first place?" 你 _____ 为什么选这个专

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

业?

- A. 当初
- B. 起初

25. Build: “It was hard at first, then it got easier.”

Put in order: 就 / 容易了。/ 后来 / 起初很难，

26. True or false? 早知今日，何必当初 expresses regret about an earlier choice. If false, correct it.

27. Talk about a hobby or subject you chose. Say how you felt at first (起初) and how you see your decision now (当初). Use 起初 or 当初. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 以往 vs 往常 and 以前 (in the past, as usual)

28. Complete: “This summer is hotter than in past years.” 今年夏天比 …… 更热。

29. “As usual, she was the first to arrive at the office.” Which is right?

- A. 和往常一样，她第一个到了办公室。
- B. 和以往不同，她第一个到了办公室。

30. “Brush your teeth before bed.” Which is right?

- A. 睡觉以往要刷牙。
- B. 睡觉以前要刷牙。

31. Build: “He usually gets up at seven, but today he slept until nine.”

Put in order: 今天 / 睡到了九点。/ 却 / 他往常七点起床，

32. True or false? 与以往不同 means “unlike in the past”. If false, correct it.

33. Describe this year’s school sports day or festival: one way it was like the usual (和往常一样) and one way it was different (与以往不同). Use 以往 or 往常 and 以前. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 不时 vs 时而 and 经常 (every now and then)

34. Complete: “As he listened, he nodded every now and then.” 他一边听，一边 …… 地点头。

35. “He goes to the library almost every day.” Which fits best?

- A. 他几乎每天都去图书馆，经常在那儿学习。
- B. 他几乎每天都去图书馆，不时在那儿学习。

36. “The weather was sometimes sunny, sometimes rainy.” Which fits best?

- A. 天气不时晴，不时雨。
- B. 天气时而晴，时而雨。

37. Build: “Every now and then the sound of cars came from outside the window.”

Put in order: 汽车的声音。/ 不时 / 窗外 / 传来

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

38. True or false? 不时 often goes with 一边 …… 一边 ……. If false, correct it.

39. Describe a person waiting for someone at a station in two sentences. Use 不时 twice (looking, checking the time). Use 不时 or 时而 and 经常. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 8. 依旧 vs 依然 and 仍然 (still, as before)

40. Complete: "Ten years have passed, and it's still as quiet here as ever." 十年过去了，这里 …… 很安静。

41. Which sentence uses 依旧 at the end of a clause, meaning "unchanged"?

- A. 依旧风景，人却变了。
- B. 风景依旧，人却变了。

42. Chatting with a friend – which sounds most natural?

- A. 他还是那么乐观。
- B. 他依旧那么乐观。

43. Build: "Although he went through many difficulties, he is still optimistic."

Put in order: 很乐观。/ 虽然经历了很多困难，/ 他 / 依旧

44. True or false? 依旧, 依然 and 仍然 all mean "still" and are more written than 还是. If false, correct it.

45. Write two sentences about going back to a place from your childhood: one thing that is 依旧, one thing that has changed. Use 依旧 or 依然 and 仍然. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 9. 频繁 vs 经常 and 老是 (very frequent)

46. Complete (an email to a repair shop): "This computer has been freezing very often lately." 这台电脑最近 …… 死机。

47. Complaining to a friend – which sounds most natural?

- A. 我的电脑老是死机，烦死了！
- B. 我的电脑频繁死机，烦死了！

48. Build: "Changing jobs too often is bad for finding work later."

Put in order: 对以后 / 频繁换工作 / 不利。/ 找工作

49. 他出差非常频繁。What does it mean?

- A. He travels for work very often.
- B. He never travels for work.

50. True or false? 频繁 can end a sentence (很频繁), while 经常 usually goes before the verb. If false, correct it.

51. Write a short formal complaint (two sentences) about a product or service that often goes wrong. Use 频繁. Use 频繁 or 经常 and 老是. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 10. 近来 vs 最近 (lately)

52. Complete (a report): "The weather has changed a lot lately." …… 天气变化很大。

53. "I'm going to Shanghai soon." Which is right?

- A. 我近来要去上海。
- B. 我最近要去上海。

54. "I recently bought a new computer." (one event) Which fits best?

- A. 近来我买了一台新电脑。
- B. 最近我买了一台新电脑。

55. Build (a letter): "How have you been lately?"

Put in order: 你 / 怎么样? / 身体 / 近来

56. True or false? 近来 is common in letters, emails and reports. If false, correct it.

57. Start an email to a former teacher: ask how they have been (近来), say what you have been doing lately, and mention one plan for the near future (最近). Use 近来 or 最近. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 11. 一如既往 vs 依旧 and 照样 (as always)

58. Complete: "We will support you, as we always have." 我们会 …… 地支持你。

59. Chatting with a friend – which is most natural?

- A. 他一如既往地早到。
- B. 他还是像以前一样早到。

60. "He goes running even when it rains." Which fits best?

- A. 下雨他也照样跑步。
- B. 下雨他也一如既往跑步。

61. Build: "We hope you will keep caring about us as before."

Put in order: 希望大家 / 我们。/ 关心 / 一如既往地

62. True or false? 一如既往 is a four-character set phrase and should not be split. If false, correct it.

63. Write the last two sentences of a thank-you speech for your school club: thank people for their support and use 一如既往 for the future. Use 一如既往 or 依旧 and 照样. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 12. 日益 vs 越来越 and 逐渐 (increasingly)

64. Complete (an essay): "City traffic is getting more and more crowded." 城市交通 …… 拥挤。

65. "There are more and more cars on the road." (spoken) Which is right?

- A. 路上的车越来越多。

- B. 路上的车日益多。

66. Which is the best essay opening?

- A. 随着经济的发展，环境问题日益严重。
- B. 随着经济的发展，环境问题日益坏。

67. Build: "People are paying more and more attention to their health."

Put in order: 日益 / 增加。/ 对健康的关注 / 人们

68. True or false? 逐渐 stresses that a change happens step by step. If false, correct it.

69. Write the first two sentences of an essay about a change in your town or school. Use 随着 … and 日益 + a two-character word. Use 日益 or 越来越 and 逐渐. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 13. 迄今 vs 截至 and 截止 (so far, as of)

70. Complete (a report): "So far, 50,000 people have signed up." …… 为止，已有五万人报名。

71. "As of the end of October, …" Which is right?

- A. 截至十月底，……
- B. 迄今十月底，……

72. "Sign-ups close tomorrow." Which is right?

- A. 报名明天截止。
- B. 报名明天截至。

73. Build: "This is the biggest race so far."

Put in order: 一次比赛。/ 最大的 / 迄今为止 / 这是

74. True or false? 至今 can also mean "still", as in 至今难忘 (still unforgettable). If false, correct it.

75. Write a two-sentence news item about a school event: give the numbers as of a date (截至), and one record so far (迄今为止). Use 迄今 or 截至 and 截止. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 14. 历来 vs 一向 and 从来 (has always)

76. Complete: "This school has always valued sport." 这所学校 …… 重视体育。

77. "He has always been punctual." (one person) Which fits best?

- A. 他一向很准时。
- B. 他历来很准时。

78. "I've never been there." Which is right?

- A. 我历来没去过。
- B. 我从来没去过。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

79. Build: “This has always been an important transport hub.”

Put in order: 这里 / 都是 / 重要的交通中心。/ 历来

80. True or false? 历来 is usually used for long traditions of places, groups or countries. If false, correct it.

81. Introduce your school or hometown to visitors in two sentences: one tradition (历来), and one thing about a person you know (一向). Use 历来 or 一向 and 从来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 15. 顶多 vs 至多, 最多 and 至少 (at most)

82. Complete: “This jacket is worth a hundred yuan at most.” 这件衣服 …… 值一百块。

83. “We’ll have to wait at least an hour.” Which is right?

- A. 顶多要等一个小时。
- B. 至少要等一个小时。

84. 他顶多是忘了，不是故意的。What does it mean?

- A. He forgot many times on purpose.
- B. At worst he forgot; it wasn’t on purpose.

85. Build: “Don’t worry – we’ll be five minutes late at most.”

Put in order: 迟到 / 五分钟。/ 别担心，/ 顶多

86. True or false? 至多 means the same as 顶多 but is written. If false, correct it.

87. A friend is worried about a small mistake at work. Calm them down with 顶多 twice. Use 顶多 or 至多, 最多 and 至少. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 16. 何止 vs 不止 (far more than)

88. Complete: “Far more than a thousand people came!” 来的人 …… 一千！

89. 喜欢这部电影的何止我一个人。What does it mean?

- A. Only I like this film.
- B. I’m far from the only one who likes this film.

90. “I read it at least five times.” Which is right?

- A. 我何止看了五遍。
- B. 我至少看了五遍。

91. Build: “I didn’t read it just once – at least five times.”

Put in order: 何止看了一遍，/ 至少 / 看了五遍。/ 这本书我

92. True or false? In everyday speech, 不止 is more common than 何止. If false, correct it.

93. Someone says your school has “about twenty clubs”. Correct them politely with

何止 and give the real picture with 至少. Use 何止 or 不止. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 17. 略微 vs 稍微 and 有点儿 (slightly)

94. Complete (a weather report): "Today is slightly warmer than yesterday." 今天比昨天 …… 暖和一些。

95. You think a shirt is a bit too expensive. Which complains?

- A. 这件衬衫有点儿贵。
- B. 这件衬衫略微贵一些。

96. A shop assistant, politely – "Please wait a moment." Which is most natural?

- A. 请稍微等一下。
- B. 请略微等一下。

97. Build: "Prices fell slightly."

Put in order: 下降了 / 略微 / 价格 / 一些。

98. True or false? 略微 and 稍微 mean the same, but 略微 is more written. If false, correct it.

99. Compare two phones in a short written review (two sentences). Use 略微 once and 稍微 once. Use 略微 or 稍微 and 有点儿. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 18. 果然 (sure enough / as expected)

100. Complete: "He said he'd come, and sure enough he did." 他说会来，…… 来了。

101. "Everyone expected him to win, but surprisingly he lost." Which word fits? 大家都以为他会赢，他 _____ 输了。

- A. 当然
- B. 竟然
- C. 果然
- D. 突然

102. Build: "I knew he'd be late, and sure enough he was."

Put in order: 迟到了。/ ， / 我就知道他会迟到 / 他果然

103. True or false? 果然 needs an earlier prediction or expectation. If false, correct it.

104. The weather app warned of afternoon storms. At three o'clock, thunder rolls in. Use 果然. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 19. 偏偏 (of all things / just had to)

105. Complete: “Everyone told him not to, but he insisted on going.” 大家让他别去，他 …… 要去。

106. Which sentence fits 偏偏 best?

- A. 天气很好，偏偏我们去爬山了。
- B. 偏偏今天星期一。
- C. 我们计划去海边，偏偏那天下雨了。
- D. 他偏偏是一个学生。

107. Build: “Everyone persuaded him, but he just wouldn’t listen.”

Put in order: ， / 他偏偏 / 大家都劝他 / 不听。

108. True or false? 偏偏 is used for any kind of surprise. If false, correct it.

109. You planned the class picnic for weeks. It has been sunny all month – until today. Use 偏偏. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 20. 似乎 (it seems / as if)

110. Complete (formal): “The plan seems to have problems.” 这个计划 …… 有问题。

111. Which is unnatural?

- A. 他好像病了。
- B. 他似乎肯定病了。
- C. 看来他病了。
- D. 他似乎病了。

112. Build: “The problem seems more complicated than we thought.”

Put in order: 问题似乎 / 复杂。/ 比我们想的 / 更

113. True or false? 好像 is more common than 似乎 in conversation. If false, correct it.

114. Your usually cheerful colleague is quiet in the meeting and avoids eye contact. Use 似乎. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 21. 不料 (unexpectedly – written)

115. Complete: “I meant to get home early, but unexpectedly there was a traffic jam.” 我本想早点儿回家，…… 路上堵车了。

116. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我等了他一个小时，他不料没来。
- B. 我等了他一个小时，不料他没来。
- C. 不料，我等了他一个小时。

117. Build: “He had just stepped out when it began to pour.”

Put in order: 大雨。/ 下起了 / 他刚出门，/ 不料

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

118. "He actually didn't come!" (surprise, after the subject) 他 _____ 没来!

- A. 竟然
- B. 不料

119. True or false? 没想到 is a spoken way to say 不料. If false, correct it.

120. Write two sentences for a story: a character's plan for the weekend, then what unexpectedly happened (不料). Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 22. 显然 vs 明显 (obviously vs obvious)

121. Complete: "He keeps yawning; he obviously didn't sleep well." 他一直打哈欠，…… 没睡好。

122. "an obvious change" – which is right?

- A. 显然的变化
- B. 明显的变化

123. Build: "This is clearly a misunderstanding."

Put in order: 显然 / 一个误会。/ 这 / 是

124. "There is an obvious difference between the two photos." 这两张照片有 _____ 的不同。

- A. 显然
- B. 明显

125. True or false? 很显然 can start a sentence that gives a conclusion. If false, correct it.

126. Your classmate got full marks after weeks of study. Write two sentences: one conclusion with 显然, and one description with 明显. Use 显然 or 明显. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 23. 不至于 (it won't come to that)

127. Complete: "However hard the exam is, you won't go so far as to fail." 考试再难，也 …… 不及格。

128. Build: "Surely he isn't so broke that he doesn't even have this little money?"

Put in order: 都没有吧？ / 他 / 不至于 / 连这点儿钱

129. Which sentence is natural?

- A. 他这么努力，不至于成功吧。
- B. 他这么努力，不至于失败吧。

130. "He was so tired that he fell asleep in class." Which word fits? 他太累了，_____ 上课睡着了。

- A. 不至于
- B. 以至于

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

131. True or false? 至于吗? asks "Is it really that serious?" If false, correct it.

132. A friend lost their phone and says, "My life is over!" Calm them down with two sentences using 不至于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 24. 终究 vs 终于 and 毕竟 (in the end / finally / after all)

133. Complete: "Lies will be found out in the end." 谎言 …… 会被发现。

134. "I finally got a ticket!" (you are happy) 我 _____ 买到票了!

- A. 终究
- B. 终于

135. Build: "He hesitated for a long time, but in the end he left."

Put in order: 还是 / 终究 / 他犹豫了很久，/ 走了。

136. "Don't blame him – he's only seven, after all." Which word is the everyday choice? 别怪他，他 _____ 才七岁。

- A. 终于
- B. 毕竟

137. True or false? 终究 is the usual word for an excited "at last!". If false, correct it.

138. Write two sentences: a hard decision someone made in the end (终究还是), and something you finally managed after waiting (终于). Use 终究 or 终于 and 毕竟. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 25. 恰巧 vs 恰好 (as it happened / exactly right)

139. Complete: "I went to see him, and as it happened he was at home." 我去找他，他 …… 在家。

140. "These shoes are exactly the right size." 这双鞋大小 _____。

- A. 恰巧
- B. 恰好

141. Build: "As it happened, I was in Beijing that day too."

Put in order: 那天 / 恰巧 / 我也 / 在北京。

142. Which is the everyday spoken word for "just right"?

- A. 恰巧
- B. 正好

143. True or false? 恰好 can mean "exactly" with a time, as in 恰好十点. If false, correct it.

144. Tell about a lucky coincidence in two sentences: use 恰巧 for the coincidence and 恰好 for something that fitted exactly. Use 恰巧 or 恰好. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 26. 必定 vs 一定 (surely / must)

145. Complete: “As long as you keep going, you will surely succeed.” 只要坚持下去，你 …… 会成功。

146. “You must come!” (a warm request) Which is right?

- A. 你必定要来！
- B. 你一定要来！

147. “not necessarily” – which is right?

- A. 不必定
- B. 不一定

148. Build: “There must be a reason for this.”

Put in order: 必定 / 有 / 原因。/ 这件事

149. True or false? 必定 is more formal than 肯定. If false, correct it.

150. Write two sentences for a short essay about reading: one prediction with 必定, and one piece of advice with 一定要. Use 必定 or 一定. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 27. 或许 vs 也许 and 恐怕 (perhaps)

151. Complete: “Perhaps he already knows.” 他 …… 已经知道了。

152. “I’m afraid we’ll miss the train.” _____ 我们赶不上火车了。

- A. 或许
- B. 恐怕

153. Build: “This book might help you.”

Put in order: 有帮助。/ 这本书 / 对你 / 或许

154. True or false? 或许 means the same as 也许 but sounds a little more written. If false, correct it.

155. A friend is stressed before an exam. Give two gentle suggestions with 或许, and one worry with 恐怕. Use 或许 or 也许 and 恐怕. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 28. 明明 (clearly ..., yet ...)

156. Complete: “You clearly knew – why didn’t you tell me?” 你 …… 知道，为什么不告诉我？

157. A neutral report says the plan obviously failed. Which fits best?

- A. 显然，这个计划失败了。
- B. 明明，这个计划失败了。

158. Build: “He obviously can’t do it, but he still says he can.”

Put in order: 明明不会，/ 还说 / 自己会。/ 他

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

159. 我明明把钥匙放在桌上了，怎么不见了？How does the speaker feel?

- A. Puzzled and annoyed
- B. Happy and relaxed

160. True or false? 明明 usually goes after the subject, but it can also start the sentence for emphasis. If false, correct it.

161. Write two short complaints with 明明: one about a friend, one about something you lost or forgot. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 29. 犹如 vs 好像 and 像 …… 一样 (just like)

162. Complete (a travel essay): "The lake was just like a mirror." 湖面 …… 一面镜子。

163. "He seems to be ill." Which is right?

- A. 他犹如生病了。
- B. 他好像生病了。

164. Chatting with a friend about the view – which sounds natural?

- A. 湖面犹如一面镜子!
- B. 湖面像镜子一样!

165. Build: "Time is like flowing water: once gone, it never comes back."

Put in order: 流水， / 时间 / 一去不复返。/ 犹如

166. True or false? 仿佛 is also a written word, meaning "as if". If false, correct it.

167. Write two sentences describing a place you love, for a short essay. Use 犹如 once and 仿佛 once. Use 犹如 or 好像 and 像 …… 一样. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 30. 凡是 ... 都 (all / any without exception)

168. Complete: "Everyone who has been there says it's good." 凡是去过那里的人，…… 说好。

169. Which sentence is complete?

- A. 学生凡是都要参加。
- B. 凡是学生都要参加。
- C. 都凡是学生要参加。
- D. 凡是学生要参加。

170. Build: "Whatever he promises, he does."

Put in order: 都会 / 做到。/ 凡是他答应的事 / ，

171. True or false? 凡是 stresses "without exception". If false, correct it.

172. The school rules are read out on the first day. Use 凡是 … 都. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 31. 一律 (uniformly / without exception)

173. Complete (notice): "All goods are 20% off." 本店商品 …… 八折。

174. "All my classmates came to the party." Which fits best?

- A. 同学们一律来了。
- B. 一律同学们来了。
- C. 同学们都来了。
- D. 同学们来了一律。

175. Build: "All students must wear school uniform."

Put in order: 校服。/ 穿 / 学生 / 一律

176. True or false? 一律 is common on signs and in rules. If false, correct it.

177. At the museum entrance, a sign explains the ticket policy. Use 一律. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 32. 再 + Adj + 也 (however ..., still ...)

178. Complete: "However tired I am, I'll finish it." 再累，我 …… 要做完。

179. What does 再贵我也要买 mean?

- A. If it's more expensive, I won't buy it.
- B. However expensive it is, I'll buy it.
- C. I'll buy it again.
- D. It's expensive again, so I'll buy it.

180. Build: "However much you explain, it's no use."

Put in order: 也 / 没用。/ 你再解释

181. True or false? 无论多忙 … 都 … expresses the same idea as 再忙 … 也 …. If false, correct it.

182. Your mother works long hours but never misses family dinner on Sundays. Use 再 + Adj + 也. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 33. 唯独 (only X – the exception)

183. Complete: "Everyone has arrived; only he hasn't come." 大家都到了，…… 他没来。

184. Build: "He's afraid of nothing – except injections."

Put in order: 打针。/ 唯独 / 怕 / 他什么都不怕，

185. "Everyone has arrived except him." Which sentence says this?

- A. 除了他以外，大家都到了。
- B. 除了他以外，大家都没到。

186. "Only he knows the answer." (no group is mentioned) Which is the most natural?

- A. 只有他知道答案。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- B. 唯独他知道答案。

187. True or false? 我什么菜都吃，唯独不吃香菜 means "I eat everything except coriander." If false, correct it.

188. Describe your family's tastes in two sentences: something everyone likes, and the one person who is different (唯独). Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 34. 统统 (all, every single one)

189. Complete: "Throw all these old clothes away!" 这些旧衣服 …… 扔掉吧！

190. "Everyone came." Which is right?

- A. 所有人都来了。
- B. 统统人都来了。

191. Build: "Take everything off the table!"

Put in order: 把桌子上的东西 / ！ / 拿走 / 统统

192. Which fits a formal notice best? 材料已 _____ 提交。

- A. 全部
- B. 统统

193. True or false? 统统 is stronger and more spoken than 都. If false, correct it.

194. You are tidying your room before the new term. Give two orders to yourself or a sibling with 统统. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 35. 归根到底 (in the final analysis)

195. Complete: "In the end, learning depends on yourself." ……，学习还得靠自己。

196. "In the end, he came after all." Which is right?

- A. 归根到底，他还是来了。
- B. 他最后还是来了。

197. Which word sums up without naming a deeper cause?

- A. 归根到底
- B. 总之

198. Build: "At root, we planned badly."

Put in order: 归根到底，/ 我们 / 计划得不好。/ 是

199. True or false? 说到底 is the lighter, spoken version. If false, correct it.

200. Why do many students find it hard to sleep early? Give two surface reasons, then the root cause with 归根到底. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 36. 很是 + Adj (a formal "very")

201. Complete (formal): "The audience was very moved." 观众 …… 感动。

202. Which is the least natural?

- A. 他很是满意。
- B. 大家很是担心。
- C. 她很是高兴。
- D. 天气很是好。

203. Build: "His children are very worried."

Put in order: 很是 / 担心。/ 孩子们

204. True or false? 很是 sounds more formal than 很. If false, correct it.

205. A news report describes how residents feel about the new park. Use 很是 + Adj. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 37. 足足 + Amount (a full / as much as)

206. Complete: "We waited a full two hours." 我们 …… 等了两个小时。

207. "It only took five minutes." Which fits?

- A. 足足才五分钟。
- B. 五分钟足足。
- C. 足足五分钟。
- D. 才五分钟。

208. Build: "This meal cost a whole 500 yuan."

Put in order: 足足 / 这顿饭 / 花了五百块。

209. True or false? 整整一天 stresses a whole, complete day. If false, correct it.

210. The queue for the new museum exhibition was much longer than you expected. Use 足足 + Amount. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 38. Verb + 得 + 倒 + Adj (a pointed note)

211. Retort: "That's easy for you to say!" 你说得 …… 容易！

212. Which order is correct?

- A. 你得说倒轻松。
- B. 你说得倒轻松。
- C. 你倒说得轻松得。
- D. 你说倒得轻松。

213. True or false? 这孩子画得倒不错 can be sincere praise. If false, correct it.

214. Build: "Dream on – he thinks he can pass without revising."

Put in order: 他想得 / 倒美 / 也能通过。/ ，以为不复习

215. Your flatmate says moving all the furniture will be easy, but he has no plans to

help. Use Verb + 得 + 倒 + Adj. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 39. 未免 (rather too – a soft criticism)

216. Complete: "That price is rather too high." 这个价格 …… 太高了。

217. Build: "Saying that is a bit unfair."

Put in order: 有点儿 / 未免 / 不公平。/ 你这样说

218. "His demands are rather too high." Which is right?

- A. 他的要求难免太高了。
- B. 他的要求未免太高了。
- C. 他的要求未免高。

219. "You're bound to be nervous the first time." Which word fits? 第一次上台 _____ 紧张。

- A. 未免
- B. 难免

220. True or false? 这个价格未免太高了 sounds softer than 这个价格太高了. If false, correct it.

221. A friend wants to quit a new job after two days because it is "too hard". Give a polite criticism with 未免, then a suggestion. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 40. 难以 (hard to – formal)

222. Complete: "This result is hard to accept." 这个结果让人 …… 接受。

223. Which phrase is correct?

- A. 难以说
- B. 难以懂
- C. 难以理解

224. What does 这个菜很难吃 mean?

- A. This dish is hard to eat.
- B. This dish tastes bad.

225. Build: "The scenery was beautiful beyond words."

Put in order: 美得 / 难以 / 风景 / 形容。

226. True or false? 这个问题难以回答 is more formal than 这个问题很难回答. If false, correct it.

227. Write two sentences about a memorable trip for an essay, using 难以 with two different verbs (e.g. 忘记, 形容). Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 41. 不止 (more than / not only)

228. Complete: “I reminded him more than once.” 我提醒过他 …… 一次。

229. “Fewer than a hundred people came.” 来了 _____ 一百人。

- A. 不到
- B. 不止

230. Build: “He’s not the only one who thinks so.”

Put in order: 这么 / 不止 / 他一个人 / 想。

231. “He can not only speak English but also French.” Which word joins the clauses? 他 _____ 会说英语，还会说法语。

- A. 不到
- B. 不仅

232. True or false? 他看起来不止六十岁 means “He looks older than sixty.” If false, correct it.

233. A friend says a film is only popular with teenagers. Disagree in two sentences with 不止. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 42. 将近 (nearly, just under)

234. Complete: “This bridge is nearly a hundred years old.” 这座桥已经有 …… 一百年了。

235. The bridge is 104 years old. Which is right?

- A. 这座桥有将近一百年了。
- B. 这座桥有一百多年了。

236. “I almost forgot.” Which is right?

- A. 我几乎忘了。
- B. 我将近忘了。

237. Build: “He didn’t marry until he was nearly forty.”

Put in order: 才 / 结婚。/ 将近四十岁 / 他

238. True or false? 将近一半的学生 means “nearly half the students”. If false, correct it.

239. Describe your school or town with two facts using 将近 (an age, a number of people, or a time). Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 43. 起码 (at the very least)

240. Complete: “Walking there takes at least half an hour.” 从这儿走过去 …… 要半个小时。

241. “the minimum requirement” – which is right?

- A. 起码的要求

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- B. 至少的要求

242. Build: "That's the most basic courtesy a person should have."

Put in order: 做人起码的 / 是 / 这 / 礼貌。

243. True or false? 最起码 is stronger than 起码. If false, correct it.

244. Which word is mainly spoken?

- A. 起码
- B. 将近

245. Your classmate wants to pass HSK 6 after one month of study. Give realistic advice with 起码 (time needed) and 起码的 + noun. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 44. 颇, 异常 and 万分 (formal "quite / very")

246. Complete (written): "This book is quite popular." 这本书 …… 受欢迎。

247. "We are extremely grateful for your help." 对您的帮助，我们 _____ 感谢。

- A. 颇
- B. 万分

248. Which fits a news report about the weather?

- A. 今年夏天万分炎热。
- B. 今年夏天异常炎热。

249. True or false? 情况异常 means "something is abnormal". If false, correct it.

250. Build: "What he said is quite reasonable."

Put in order: 有 / 道理。/ 颇 / 他的话

251. Write a short formal thank-you note to a host family (two sentences). Use 万分 once and 颇 or 异常 once. Use 颇, 异常 and 万分. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 45. 接连 vs 连续 (in a row)

252. Complete: "He made three calls in a row." 他 …… 打了三个电话。

253. "I plan to study for three hours without a break." Which is right?

- A. 我打算连续学三个小时。
- B. 我打算接连学三个小时。

254. "The guests arrived one after another over the evening." Which fits best?

- A. 客人们陆续到了。
- B. 客人们接连到了。

255. Build: "Our team has won the championship three years in a row."

Put in order: 三年 / 连续 / 我们队 / 得了冠军。

256. True or false? 接连 often describes events that happen to you, like 接连出了几件怪事. If false, correct it.

257. Describe a bad day in two or three sentences: use 接连 for things that went wrong one after another, and 连续 for something that went on without a break. Use 接连 or 连续. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 46. 大致 vs 大概 (roughly, in outline)

258. Complete: "The two plans are roughly the same." 两个方案 …… 相同。

259. "He's probably not coming." Which is right?

- A. 他大概不来了。
- B. 他大致不来了。

260. Build: "First give us a rough outline of the plan."

Put in order: 说一下 / 大致的 / 计划。/ 你先

261. 我大致看懂了这篇文章。What does the speaker mean?

- A. I understood every word.
- B. I understood the main points.

262. True or false? 基本上 means "basically, for the most part". If false, correct it.

263. Describe a film or book you know in two sentences: first the rough story with 大致, then a guess about a sequel with 大概. Use 大致 or 大概. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 47. 何必 (why bother / no need)

264. Complete: "Why get angry over such a small thing?" …… 为这点儿小事生气呢?

265. What does 何必呢? mean?

- A. There's no need for that.
- B. Where is it?
- C. What do you need?
- D. Why did you do it?

266. Build: "Since he doesn't like it, why force him?"

Put in order: 既然他不喜欢 / 勉强他? / , / 你又何必

267. True or false? 你不必担心 states plainly what 你何必担心呢 suggests. If false, correct it.

268. Your friend is about to take a taxi across town to return a cheap pen you lent him. Use 何必. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 48. 无非 (nothing but / merely)

269. Complete: “He merely wants to earn more money.” 他 …… 是想多赚点儿钱。

270. What tone does 无非 often add?

- A. Dismissive summarising
- B. Politeness
- C. Surprise
- D. Admiration

271. Build: “He’s doing it merely to attract attention.”

Put in order: 引起注意。 / 他这么做 / 无非是想 / ，

272. True or false? 只是 is more neutral than 无非. If false, correct it.

273. Your manager has heard your colleague’s reasons for being late many times before. Use 无非. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 49. 到时候 (when the time comes)

274. Complete: “Let’s deal with it when the time comes.” …… 再说吧。

275. “At that time I was still very young.” Which fits? _____ 我还很小。

- A. 将来
- B. 到时候
- C. 当时
- D. 以后

276. Build: “If you don’t revise now, it’ll be too late then.”

Put in order: ， / 你现在不复习 / 就来不及了。 / 到时候

277. True or false? 到时候 refers to the future. If false, correct it.

278. Your friend asks what you’ll do if the flight is cancelled next month. Use 到时候. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 50. 迟早 / 早晚 (sooner or later)

279. Complete: “You’ll understand sooner or later.” 你 …… 会明白的。

280. Build: “Sooner or later your health will suffer.”

Put in order: 会 / 迟早 / 出问题。 / 身体

281. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他迟早来了。
- B. 他迟早会来的。
- C. 迟早他来了会。

282. What does 早晚各吃一次药 mean?

- A. Take the medicine once in the morning and once in the evening.
- B. Take the medicine sooner or later.

283. True or false? 迟早 means the event is certain but the time is unknown. If false, correct it.

284. A friend has been lying to their parents about their grades. Warn them with 迟早, then comfort them with 早晚. Use 迟早 / 早晚. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 51. 务必 (be sure to – formal request)

285. Complete: "Please be sure to attend on time." 请 …… 准时参加。

286. Build: "Everyone, please make sure you hand in your reports before Friday."

Put in order: 务必 / 请大家 / 交报告。/ 在周五之前

287. "Please be sure not to be late." Which is right?

- A. 请不务必迟到。
- B. 请务必不要迟到。
- C. 请务必迟到不。

288. A school rule: "Students must wear uniform." Which word fits best? 学生 _____ 穿校服。

- A. 务必
- B. 必须

289. True or false? 务必 sounds more formal than 一定要. If false, correct it.

290. Write a short email to classmates about a trip: two important reminders with 务必 (one positive, one with 务必不要). Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 52. 反之 vs 相反 and 否则 (conversely)

291. Complete (an essay): 经常运动的人身体好；……，不运动的人容易生病。

292. "He wasn't angry – on the contrary, he was very happy." Which fits best?

- A. 他没生气，反之，他很高兴。
- B. 他没生气，相反，他很高兴。

293. "Hurry up, otherwise you'll be late." (speech) Which fits?

- A. 快点儿，要不然会迟到。
- B. 快点儿，反之会迟到。

294. Build: "When prices are low, many people buy; when they aren't, few do."

Put in order: 价格低，买的人就多；/ 就少。/ 买的人 / 反之，

295. True or false? After 反之 you don't need to repeat the opposite condition. If false, correct it.

296. Write two sentences for an essay about sleep or reading: state a condition and its result, then the opposite case with 反之. Use 反之 or 相反 and 否则. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 53. 不禁 / 不由得 (can't help – a reaction)

297. Complete: "Hearing the news, she couldn't help bursting into tears." 听到这个消息，她 …… 哭了起来。

298. Build: "Seeing this old photo, I couldn't help remembering my childhood."

Put in order: 我 / 不禁 / 看到这张老照片，/ 想起了小时候。

299. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 明天我不禁去看他。
- B. 看到他的样子，我不禁笑了。
- C. 不禁我笑了。

300. "I'm afraid I won't be able to keep from laughing (at the meeting tomorrow)." Which is more natural in speech?

- A. 我怕我会不禁笑。
- B. 我怕我会忍不住笑。

301. True or false? 不由得你不信 means "you can't help believing it". If false, correct it.

302. Write two sentences for a story: something your character saw or heard, and the reaction they couldn't hold back. Use 不禁 once and 不由得 once. Use 不禁 / 不由得. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 54. 动不动就 (at the slightest thing)

303. Complete: "This child cries at the slightest thing." 这孩子动不动 …… 哭。

304. Build: "Young people change jobs at the drop of a hat."

Put in order: 换工作。/ 动不动 / 年轻人 / 就

305. You want to PRAISE him for helping people. Which sentence fits?

- A. 他经常帮助别人。
- B. 他动不动就帮助别人。
- C. 他动不动帮助别人。

306. True or false? 动不动就 shows the speaker doesn't like the habit. If false, correct it.

307. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他动不动就迟到。
- B. 动不动他迟到就。
- C. 他动不动迟到。

308. Complain to a friend about a roommate with two bad habits. Use 动不动就 twice. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 55. 索性 (might as well / simply)

309. Complete: “Since I’m already late, I might as well not go.” 既然已经迟到了，我 …… 不去了。

310. Build: “I couldn’t sleep, so I simply got up and read.”

Put in order: 我 / 睡不着， / 索性 / 起来看书。

311. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 索性，因为电脑坏了。
- B. 我今天索性很累。
- C. 这台电脑老是坏，索性买台新的吧。

312. “He is very straightforward.” Which word fits? 他这个人很 _____。

- A. 索性
- B. 干脆

313. True or false? 干脆 and 索性 can both mean “might as well, simply”. If false, correct it.

314. Your bus is forty minutes late and your home is only two kilometres away. Say what you decide to do, using 索性. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 56. 顿时 (at once – a sudden change)

315. Complete: “The moment the teacher came in, the classroom went quiet.” 老师一进来，教室里 …… 安静了。

316. “Come here right now!” Which is right?

- A. 你立刻过来！
- B. 你顿时过来！

317. Build: “When he heard this, he understood at once.”

Put in order: 顿时 / 听了这句话， / 明白了。 / 他

318. “Suddenly the phone rang” (nothing caused it). Which word fits best? 电话 _____ 响了。

- A. 顿时
- B. 忽然

319. True or false? 顿时 usually goes with a change of state or feeling. If false, correct it.

320. Write two sentences for a story: the lights went out at a party, and then came back on. Use 顿时 after each event. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 57. 随即 (immediately after that)

321. Complete: “He took a phone call and left the meeting right after.” 他接了一个电话，…… 离开了会场。

322. “Please leave immediately.” (a notice) Which is right?

- A. 请随即离开。
- B. 请立即离开。

323. “We’ll be there shortly.” 我们 _____ 就到。

- A. 随后
- B. 随即

324. Build: “As soon as the news came out, lots of comments appeared online.”

Put in order: 消息公布后， / 随即 / 出现了很多评论。/ 网上

325. True or false? 随即 is mainly used in written stories and reports. If false, correct it.

326. Write a two-sentence news-style report about a school event. Use 随即 once to show what happened straight after. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 58. 依次 vs 轮流 and 陆续 (in turn)

327. Complete (a notice): “Please get on the bus in order.” 请大家 …… 上车。

328. “We take turns cooking.” 我们 _____ 做饭。

- A. 依次
- B. 轮流

329. “The guests arrived one after another, at different times and in no set order.” 客人 _____ 到了。

- A. 依次
- B. 陆续

330. True or false? 依次 is read yīcì and means “once”. If false, correct it.

331. Build: “He presented the three plans one by one.”

Put in order: 介绍了 / 他 / 依次 / 三个方案。

332. Write the instructions for a school fire drill (two sentences) with 依次, and one sentence with 陆续 about what happened. Use 依次 or 轮流 and 陆续. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 59. 大不了 (at worst; no big deal)

333. Complete: “If it goes badly, at worst you can take it again next year.” 考不好 …… 明年再考。

334. Your friend broke a cheap cup and is upset. What do you say?

- A. 这有什么大不了的？再买一个就行了。

- B. 这有什么至少的？再买一个就行了。

335. "We'll wait ten minutes at most." Which is right?

- A. 我们最多等十分钟。
- B. 我们大不了等十分钟。

336. Build: "If we miss the bus, at worst we'll take a taxi."

Put in order: 没赶上车 / 也没关系，/ 打车去。/ 大不了

337. True or false? 大不了 is casual speech; a formal letter would use 即使 ……，也 …… If false, correct it.

338. A friend is worried about two things: a job interview and the rain on a trip. Calm them down with 大不了 and 没什么大不了的. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 60. 专程 vs 专门 and 顺便 (specially)

339. Complete: "He came specially to see me." 他 …… 来看我。

340. "He made a cake specially for me." Which is right?

- A. 他专门为我做了一个蛋糕。
- B. 他专程为我做了一个蛋糕。

341. "I'm going to the supermarket – I'll get you some fruit while I'm there." Which fits?

- A. 我去超市，专程帮你买点儿水果。
- B. 我去超市，顺便帮你买点儿水果。

342. Build: "We went to Hangzhou specially to see West Lake."

Put in order: 我们 / 去杭州 / 看西湖。/ 专程

343. True or false? 谢谢你专程来接我 thanks someone for making a trip just for you. If false, correct it.

344. Write a short thank-you message to someone who came to your school play: use 专程, and add one thing you will do 顺便 next time you visit them. Use 专程 or 专门 and 顺便. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 61. 不惜 vs 舍不得 (whatever it costs)

345. Complete: "To save the child, he didn't hesitate to jump into the icy river." 为了救孩子，他 …… 跳进冰冷的河里。

346. "He can't bear to spend money." Which is right?

- A. 他不惜花钱。
- B. 他舍不得花钱。

347. Which sentence uses 不惜 well?

- A. 为了学好中文，她不惜花了三年时间在中国生活。

- B. 为了不迟到，她不惜看了一下手表。

348. Build: “We will finish the task at any cost.”

Put in order: 不惜一切代价 / 我们会 / 完成 / 任务。

349. True or false? 为了赢，他不惜说谎 criticises the person. If false, correct it.

350. Write two sentences: one praising someone who gave up a lot for a goal (不惜), one about someone who can’t bear to give something up (舍不得). Use 不惜 or 舍不得. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 62. 默默 vs 悄悄 (silently)

351. Complete: “For twenty years she has quietly helped many people, never asking for thanks.” 她二十年来 …… 地帮助了很多人。

352. A late student doesn’t want the teacher to notice. Which fits best?

- A. 他悄悄地走进教室。
- B. 他默默地走进教室。

353. 默默无闻的英雄 means …

- A. famous heroes
- B. unsung heroes

354. Build: “He stared silently out of the window and said nothing.”

Put in order: 也没说。/ 他默默地 / 什么 / 看着窗外，

355. True or false? 默默 often praises people who work hard without asking for thanks. If false, correct it.

356. Write two or three sentences about someone at your school who works hard without being noticed (a cleaner, a guard, a cook). Use 默默. Use 默默 or 悄悄. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 63. 擅自 vs 私自 and 随便 (without permission)

357. Complete (a sign): “Do not enter without permission.” 请勿 …… 进入。

358. A host says to guests: “Sit wherever you like!” Which is right?

- A. 随便坐吧！
- B. 擅自坐吧！

359. Which is a typical rule?

- A. 不得擅自改变计划。
- B. 不得擅自高兴。

360. Build: “He left the office without permission.”

Put in order: 公司。/ 他 / 离开了 / 擅自

361. True or false? 私自 means doing something privately, without asking, often secretly. If false, correct it.

362. Write three rules for your school library or lab, using 请勿 / 不得 / 禁止 with 擅自. Use 擅自 or 私自 and 随便. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 64. 及早 vs 尽早 and 及时 (as early as possible)

363. Complete (a health leaflet): "If you're ill, get treatment as early as possible." 有病要 …… 治疗。

364. "Luckily the ambulance came in time." Which is right?

- A. 幸亏救护车来得及早。
- B. 幸亏救护车来得及时。

365. Which is a typical polite request at the end of an email?

- A. 请及时早回复。
- B. 请尽早回复。

366. Build: "When you find a problem, solve it before it gets worse."

Put in order: 要 / 发现问题 / 及早 / 解决。

367. True or false? 及早 stresses acting early; 及时 stresses acting at the right time. If false, correct it.

368. Write two pieces of advice for students before exams. Use 及早 once and 尽早 once. Use 及早 or 尽早 and 及时. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 65. 当场 vs 当时 (on the spot / at that time)

369. Complete: "The police caught the thief on the spot." 警察 …… 抓住了小偷。

370. "At that time I was still at university." Which is right?

- A. 当场我还在上大学。
- B. 当时我还在上大学。

371. 评委当场宣布了比赛结果。When were the results announced?

- A. A week later, by email
- B. Right there, at the competition

372. Build: "He agreed right there and then."

Put in order: 当场 / 就 / 答应了。/ 他

373. True or false? 马上 is the everyday word for "right away". If false, correct it.

374. Write a two-sentence news item about a talent show: use 当场 for something that happened there, and 当时 for how people felt at that time. Use 当场 or 当时. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 66. 随意 vs 随便 (as you please)

375. Complete (a host to guests): "Please feel free to look around." 请大家 …… 参观。

376. Which is a typical museum sign?

- A. 请勿随意触摸展品。
- B. 请随意触摸展品。

377. A friend asks what you want to eat. You don't mind. Which is most natural?

- A. 吃什么都行，随便。
- B. 吃什么都行，随意。

378. Build: "Don't throw rubbish around carelessly."

Put in order: 随意 / 丢 / 不要 / 垃圾。

379. True or false? 自由活动 means free time, for example on a school trip. If false, correct it.

380. You are hosting a class party. Write two sentences: invite guests to help themselves (随意), and give one polite rule (请勿随意 …). Use 随意 or 随便. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 67. 丝毫 vs 毫不 and 一点儿也不 (not in the least)

381. Complete: "He showed no sign at all of giving up." 他 …… 没有放弃的意思。

382. Which is correct?

- A. 她毫不犹豫地答应了。
- B. 她毫不不犹豫地答应了。
- C. 她丝毫犹豫地答应了。

383. Chatting with a friend – "I'm not tired at all." Which is most natural?

- A. 我毫不累。
- B. 我一点儿也不累。

384. Build: "After ten years, the town has not changed at all."

Put in order: 小镇 / 没有 / 丝毫变化。/ 十年过去了，

385. True or false? 毫不在乎 means "not caring at all". If false, correct it.

386. Write two sentences about someone who faced a difficulty bravely. Use 毫不 + a two-character word, and 丝毫没有 or 丝毫不. Use 丝毫 or 毫不 and 一点儿也不. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 68. 毫无 vs 毫不 and 没有 (not any at all)

387. Complete: "Doing this is completely pointless." 这样做 …… 意义。

388. "He doesnt care at all what others think." Which is correct?

- A. 他毫不在乎别人的看法。

- B. 他毫无在乎别人的看法。

389. Which opening means “Without any doubt, …”?

- A. 毫不疑问，……
- B. 毫无疑问，……

390. Build: “Facing the sudden change, he was completely helpless.”

Put in order: 办法。/ 他 / 面对突然的变化，/ 毫无

391. True or false? 一点儿意思也没有 is the spoken way to say “no point at all”. If false, correct it.

392. Give a two-sentence opinion against a school rule. Use 毫无 + noun once and 毫不 + verb once. Use 毫无 or 毫不 and 没有. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

393. Choose 果然 or 偏偏: 天气预报说下雨，…… 下雨了。/ 我们想去公园，天…… 下起雨来。

394. Choose 向来 or 一度: 他 …… 很守时。/ 他 …… 想放弃，后来坚持下来了。

395. Say “Why bother taking a taxi? It’s only five minutes on foot.”

396. Say “Everyone who signed up must arrive on time.”

397. Find and fix the problem. A classmate translates 果然 as “unexpectedly” and 似乎 as “certainly”. Correct both.

398. Use it yourself. Say your friend predicted rain and sure enough it rained, and that on the one day you planned a picnic it had to rain.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 向来 (always / all along)

1. 向来

向来 = always (long-standing).

2. D. 今天一直下雨。

One stretch of time takes 一直.

3. 我向来不相信这种广告。

Subject + 向来 + 不 + verb.

4. True.

True. 向来 ("always, all along") describes a long-standing habit and works with positive and negative predicates: 他向来很准时 / 他向来不喝酒.

5. Model answer: 他向来很准时，今天没来，肯定有事。

Check your answer:

- 向来 describes long-standing patterns, not one recent stretch: for "all morning", use 一直.
- It sounds formal; in speech 一向 or 从来 (with negatives) are common.

■ 2. 一向 (all along / consistently)

6. 一向

一向 = consistently.

7. D. 他一直在等。

A single stretch takes 一直.

8. 这家公司一向重视质量。

Subject + 一向 + verb.

9. True.

向来 is a little more formal.

10. Model answer: 她做事一向很认真。

Check your answer:

- 一向 describes long-term character; for one continuous stretch use 一直: 他一直在等 – "He's been waiting the whole time."
- It is not "towards": that is 向 alone (向前走).

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 一再 + Verb (again and again)

11. 一再

一再 + verb = repeatedly.

12. A. 我跟他说了好几次。

好几次 is the casual choice.

13. 会议一再推迟。

Subject + 一再 + verb.

14. True.

True. 一再 means "again and again" and usually carries insistence or emphasis: 他一再强调安全 "He stressed safety repeatedly." It often goes with verbs like 强调, 要求, 表示.

15. Model answer: 妈妈一再提醒他，他还是忘了。

Check your answer:

- 一再 mostly reports actions already repeated; for advice about the future, 再三 often fits better: 请你再三考虑 – "Please think it over carefully."
- It sounds formal; in chat, 好几次 is more natural: 我跟他说了好几次 – "I've told him several times."

■ 4. 时而 A，时而 B (now A, now B)

16. 时而

Repeat 时而 before the second state.

17. 音乐时而轻柔，时而激烈。

时而 A，时而 B.

18. C. 孩子时而哭，时而笑。

时而 … 时而 … needs two different states, with 时而 before each.

19. B. 天气一会儿晴，一会儿下雨。

一会儿 … 一会儿 … is the spoken form; 时而 is written.

20. True.

他时而也会想起家乡 = now and then he thinks of his hometown.

21. Model answer: 等成绩的时候，她时而站起来走来走去，时而坐下来看手机。她的心情也时而紧张，时而兴奋。

Check your answer:

- Each 时而 pair joins two different states.
- The sentences sound like written description.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 5. 起初 vs 当初 (at first / back then)

22. 起初

The first stage of a change – 起初.

23. 当初

Looking back at a past decision – 当初.

24. A. 当初

The moment of a decision, looked back on – 当初.

25. 起初很难，后来就容易了。

起初 … 后来 … shows the change.

26. True.

If I'd known it would end like this, I wouldn't have done it.

27. Model answer: 起初我觉得学钢琴很无聊，后来越弹越喜欢。现在我很感谢当初妈妈让我坚持下来。

Check your answer:

- 起初 starts a change, with 后来 or 现在 after it.
- 当初 looks back at the moment of a decision.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 6. 以往 vs 往常 and 以前 (in the past, as usual)

28. 以往

Past years in general – 以往.

29. A. 和往常一样，她第一个到了办公室。

As usual – 和往常一样.

30. B. 睡觉以前要刷牙。

Event + 以前.

31. 他往常七点起床，今天却睡到了九点。

往常 (the routine) vs 今天 (today).

32. True.

与以往不同，今年的比赛在网上举行.

33. Model answer: 和往常一样，运动会在十月举行。与以往不同的是，今年每个班都要准备一个开场表演，大家比以往更积极了。

Check your answer:

- 往常 compares with the normal routine.
- 以往 compares with past years.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 7. 不时 vs 时而 and 经常 (every now and then)

34. 不时

Every now and then, during one situation – 不时.

35. A. 他几乎每天都去图书馆，经常在那儿学习。

Almost every day is often – 经常. 不时 is "now and then".

36. B. 天气时而晴，时而雨。

Switching between two states – 时而 …… 时而 …….

37. 窗外不时传来汽车的声音。

Place + 不时 + 传来 + sound.

38. True.

一边做饭，一边不时看看手机.

39. Model answer: 他站在出口旁边，不时抬头看看大屏幕。等了半个小时，他还不时看看手表，看起来有点儿着急。

Check your answer:

- 不时 describes small actions that come back.
- The scene is one situation.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 8. 依旧 vs 依然 and 仍然 (still, as before)

40. 依旧

Still, as before – 依旧.

41. B. 风景依旧，人却变了。

Noun + 依旧 = the noun is unchanged.

42. A. 他还是那么乐观。

In speech, 还是; 依旧 is written.

43. 虽然经历了很多困难，他依旧很乐观。

A change first, then 依旧.

44. True.

In speech, 还是 / 还.

45. Model answer: 小学门口的那棵大树依旧那么高。可是旁边的小商店已经不见了，变成了一家咖啡馆。

Check your answer:

- 依旧 shows something stayed the same after time passed.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- The change is clear in the other sentence.
- I read them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 9. 频繁 vs 经常 and 老是 (very frequent)

46. 频繁

Very often in a short time (written) – 频繁.

47. A. 我的电脑老是死机，烦死了!

In speech, 老是 (a complaint); 频繁 is written.

48. 频繁换工作对以后找工作不利。

频繁 + verb as the topic.

49. A. He travels for work very often.

频繁 = very frequent.

50. True.

交流很频繁 / 经常交流.

51. Model answer: 我上个月买的耳机最近频繁断开连接，影响了正常使用。希望贵公司能尽快帮我处理。

Check your answer:

- 频繁 describes a problem that happens too often.
- The style is formal.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 10. 近来 vs 最近 (lately)

52. 近来

A lasting recent situation (written) – 近来.

53. B. 我最近要去上海。

最近 can point to the near future; 近来 only looks back.

54. B. 最近我买了一台新电脑。

One everyday event – 最近 is more natural.

55. 你近来身体怎么样?

近来 + situation.

56. True.

It is a written word.

57. Model answer: 王老师，您好！您近来身体好吗？我近来在准备 HSK 六级考试，每天都很忙。最近我打算回学校看看您。

Check your answer:

- 近来 describes a lasting situation.
- 最近 points to the near future.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 11. 一如既往 vs 依旧 and 照样 (as always)

58. 一如既往

As always – 一如既往.

59. B. 他还是像以前一样早到。

In speech, 还是像以前一样; 一如既往 is formal.

60. A. 下雨他也照样跑步。

Regardless – 照样 (spoken).

61. 希望大家一如既往地关心我们。

一如既往地 + verb.

62. True.

Keep 一如既往 together.

63. Model answer: 感谢老师和同学们这一年来对我们社团的支持。新的一年里，我们会一如既往地努力，也希望大家一如既往地关心我们。

Check your answer:

- 一如既往 is kept together and followed by 地 + verb.
- The tone fits a speech.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 12. 日益 vs 越来越 and 逐渐 (increasingly)

64. 日益

Increasingly (written) – 日益.

65. A. 路上的车越来越多。

多 is one character, and it's speech – 越来越.

66. A. 随着经济的发展，环境问题日益严重。

日益 + a two-character word (严重).

67. 人们对健康的关注日益增加。

日益 + verb.

68. True.

天气逐渐变暖了 – gradually.

69. Model answer: 随着手机的普及，学生使用手机的时间日益增加。这给学习带来了不少问题。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Check your answer:

- 日益 goes before a two-character word.
- The style fits an essay.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 13. 迄今 vs 截至 and 截止 (so far, as of)

70. 迄今

Up to now – 迄今为止.

71. A. 截至十月底，……

Up to a stated date – 截至 (迄今 already means "up to now").

72. A. 报名明天截止。

To close, a deadline – 截止.

73. 这是迄今为止最大的一次比赛。

迄今为止 + superlative.

74. True.

至今 = up to now / still.

75. Model answer: 截至 11 月 15 日，已有三百名学生报名参加今年的读书节。这是我校迄今为止参加人数最多的一次活动。

Check your answer:

- 截至 comes with a date.
- 迄今为止 needs no date.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 14. 历来 vs 一向 and 从来 (has always)

76. 历来

A long tradition – 历来.

77. A. 他一向很准时。

A person's habit – 一向.

78. B. 我从来没去过。

Never – 从来没.

79. 这里历来都是重要的交通中心。

历来 + 都是.

80. True.

中国人历来重视教育.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

81. Model answer: 我的家乡历来以茶叶出名，每年春天都有很多游客来买茶。我爷爷一向喜欢早上喝一杯绿茶。

Check your answer:

- 历来 describes a long tradition.
- 一向 describes one person's habit.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 15. 顶多 vs 至多, 最多 and 至少 (at most)

82. 顶多

At most – 顶多.

83. B. 至少要等一个小时。

At least – 至少.

84. B. At worst he forgot; it wasn't on purpose.

顶多 + verb = at worst (it's not so bad).

85. 别担心，顶多迟到五分钟。

顶多 + verb + amount.

86. True.

会议至多一个小时.

87. Model answer: 别着急，这个错误不大，老板顶多说你两句。改起来也很快，顶多半个小时就好了。

Check your answer:

- 顶多 makes the problem sound small.
- It comes before an amount or a verb.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 16. 何止 vs 不止 (far more than)

88. 何止

Far more than – 何止.

89. B. I'm far from the only one who likes this film.

何止我一个人 = not just me.

90. B. 我至少看了五遍。

A lower limit – 至少.

91. 这本书我何止看了一遍，至少看了五遍。

何止 corrects the small number; 至少 gives the real one.

92. True.

来的人不止一千.

93. Model answer: 我们学校的社团何止二十个，至少有四十个，从机器人到书法都有。

Check your answer:

- 何止 corrects a number that is too small.
- 至少 gives the real number.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 17. 略微 vs 稍微 and 有点儿 (slightly)

94. 略微

Slightly (written) – 略微.

95. A. 这件衬衫有点儿贵。

有点儿 + adjective often complains.

96. A. 请稍微等一下。

Everyday – 稍微 (or 稍等).

97. 价格略微下降了一些。

略微 + verb + 一些.

98. True.

Both mean slightly.

99. Model answer: 和上一代相比，新款手机的屏幕略微大一些，电池也更耐用。不过价格稍微高了一点儿。

Check your answer:

- 略微 / 稍微 go before an adjective or verb, often with 一些 or 一点儿.
- The comparison is neutral, not a complaint.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 18. 果然 (sure enough / as expected)

100. 果然

果然 confirms an expectation.

101. B. 竟然

Against expectation = 竟然.

102. 我就知道他会迟到，他果然迟到了。

Prediction, then 果然 + result.

103. True.

It confirms what was expected.

104. Model answer: 天气预报说下午有雨，果然下雨了。

Check your answer:

- 果然 only makes sense after a prediction, warning or reputation; without one, it sounds odd.
- For a surprise (against expectation), use 竟然 / 居然, the opposite of 果然.

■ 19. 偏偏 (of all things / just had to)

105. 偏偏

偏偏 = stubbornly does the opposite.

106. C. 我们计划去海边，偏偏那天下雨了。

偏偏 needs an event against a wish.

107. 大家都劝他，他偏偏不听。

Subject + 偏偏 + negative.

108. False.

It stresses going against a wish; 竟然 covers any surprise.

109. Model answer: 我们好不容易定了野餐的日子，偏偏那天下雨。

Check your answer:

- 偏偏 only works when the event goes against a wish or advice; for a neutral fact, leave it out.
- As an adverb it follows the subject: 他偏偏不听 ("He just refuses to listen"). Before 是 + noun it means "of all people / things": 偏偏是他.

■ 20. 似乎 (it seems / as if)

110. 似乎

似乎 gives a tentative impression.

111. B. 他似乎肯定病了。

Tentative 似乎 does not combine with 肯定.

112. 问题似乎比我们想的更复杂。

Subject + 似乎 + comparison.

113. True.

True. Both mean "seem", but 似乎 is more formal and written. In everyday speech 好像 is far more common: 他好像不太高兴.

114. Model answer: 他似乎有什么心事。

Check your answer:

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 似乎 is soft, so 一定 / 肯定 with it sounds contradictory: 他似乎病了, not 他似乎肯定病了.
- It sounds formal; in conversation 好像 is more common.

■ 21. 不料 (unexpectedly – written)

115. 不料

Plan first, then 不料 + what happened instead.

116. B. 我等了他一个小时，不料他没来。

不料 starts its clause, before the subject, after the expectation.

117. 他刚出门，不料下起了大雨。

不料 opens the clause with the surprise.

118. A. 竟然

竟然 goes after the subject and shows surprise.

119. True.

没想到 and 谁知 work like 不料 in speech.

120. Model answer: 小李打算周末去海边玩儿，不料星期六一早就下起了大雨。他只好在家看了一天书。

Check your answer:

- The first clause gives a plan or expectation.
- 不料 starts the next clause, before the subject.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 22. 显然 vs 明显 (obviously vs obvious)

121. 显然

Evidence first, then 显然 + the conclusion.

122. B. 明显的变化

Before a noun, use the adjective 明显.

123. 这显然是一个误会。

显然是 = is clearly.

124. B. 明显

明显的不同 = an obvious difference (adjective before a noun).

125. True.

很显然，… = quite obviously, ….

126. Model answer: 他这几个星期每天都学到很晚，显然下了很大功夫。他的口语也有了明显的进步。

Check your answer:

- 显然 gives a conclusion from evidence.
- 明显 describes something visible, before a noun or verb.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 23. 不至于 (it won't come to that)

127. 不至于

不至于 + a bad result = it won't come to that.

128. 他不至于连这点儿钱都没有吧?

不至于连 … 都 … rejects an extreme idea.

129. B. 他这么努力，不至于失败吧。

不至于 is used about results nobody wants (失败).

130. B. 以至于

以至于 = so much that.

131. True.

It is a spoken reply to an over-reaction.

132. Model answer: 别着急，丢了一个手机，不至于这么严重吧。你的照片都在网上，不至于全丢了。

Check your answer:

- Each 不至于 comes before a bad result.
- My tone is reassuring.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 24. 终究 vs 终于 and 毕竟 (in the end / finally / after all)

133. 终究

What happens in the end, no matter what – 终究.

134. B. 终于

A hoped-for result after waiting – 终于.

135. 他犹豫了很久，终究还是走了。

终究还是 + the result.

136. B. 毕竟

毕竟 gives a reason to keep in mind (终究 also works but is more formal).

137. False.

That is 终于.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

138. Model answer: 他想了很久，终究还是决定出国了。等了半年，我终于收到了录取通知。

Check your answer:

- 终究还是 gives an outcome after hesitation.
- 终于 gives a hoped-for result.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 25. 恰巧 vs 恰好 (as it happened / exactly right)

139. 恰巧

A lucky coincidence – 恰巧 (or 恰好 / 正好).

140. B. 恰好

A fit – 恰好. 恰巧 is only for coincidence.

141. 恰巧那天我也在北京。

恰巧 can start the sentence.

142. B. 正好

正好 / 刚好 are everyday; 恰巧 / 恰好 are written.

143. True.

恰好十点 = exactly ten o'clock.

144. Model answer: 我的车坏在路上，恰巧一位朋友开车经过。他的车里恰好还有一个座位，就把我送回了家。

Check your answer:

- 恰巧 tells a coincidence; 恰好 tells an exact fit.
- Both come before the verb or at the start.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 26. 必定 vs 一定 (surely / must)

145. 必定

A confident judgement – 必定.

146. B. 你一定要来!

Requests take 一定; 必定 is a judgement.

147. B. 不一定

必定 can't take 不 before it.

148. 这件事必定有原因。

必定 + verb.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

149. True.

肯定 is everyday; 必定 is written.

150. Model answer: 每天读一点儿书，时间长了，必定会有很大的收获。所以大家一定要养成读书的习惯。

Check your answer:

- 必定 gives a confident judgement.
- 一定要 gives the advice.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 27. 或许 vs 也许 and 恐怕 (perhaps)

151. 或许

A soft guess – 或许.

152. B. 恐怕

A guess about something bad – 恐怕.

153. 这本书或许对你有帮助。

或许 before the verb phrase.

154. True.

Both mean "perhaps".

155. Model answer: 你或许可以先休息一下。换个复习方法或许会更有效。不过你一直不睡觉，恐怕考试的时候会没有精神。

Check your answer:

- 或许 softens each suggestion.
- 恐怕 gives the worry.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 28. 明明 (clearly ..., yet ...)

156. 明明

A plain fact, then a complaint – 明明.

157. A. 显然，这个计划失败了。

A neutral conclusion – 显然. 明明 needs a contrast after it.

158. 他明明不会，还说自己会。

明明 + fact, 还 + the opposite.

159. A. Puzzled and annoyed

明明 + 怎么 shows surprise that things don't match.

160. True.

你明明知道 / 明明是你说的.

161. Model answer: 你明明说好七点到，怎么九点才来？我明明记得作业放进书包了，怎么找不到了？

Check your answer:

- Each 明明 is followed by a contrast (却 / 还 / 怎么 / 为什么).
- 明明 is after the subject.
- I said them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 29. 犹如 vs 好像 and 像 …… 一样 (just like)

162. 犹如

A written comparison – 犹如.

163. B. 他好像生病了。

A guess – 好像.

164. B. 湖面像镜子一样!

In speech, 像 …… 一样; 犹如 is written.

165. 时间犹如流水，一去不复返。

A 犹如 B.

166. True.

犹如 and 仿佛 are both written.

167. Model answer: 秋天的公园犹如一幅油画，到处是红色和黄色的叶子。走在小路上，我仿佛回到了小时候。

Check your answer:

- 犹如 makes a clear comparison.
- The style fits an essay.
- I read them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 30. 凡是 ... 都 (all / any without exception)

168. 都

凡是 … 都 ….

169. B. 凡是学生都要参加。

凡是 introduces a whole category and needs 都 before the verb: 凡是学生都要参加 "All students, without exception, must attend." Without 都 the sentence is incomplete, and 凡是 must come first.

170. 凡是他答应的事，都会做到。

凡是 … 的事，都 ….

171. True.

True. 凡是 means "every … without exception" and is stronger than 所有. It is usually followed by 都 in the main clause.

172. Model answer: 凡是迟到的学生，都要写说明。

Check your answer:

- Do not drop 都: 凡是学生都要参加, not 凡是学生要参加.
- 凡是 introduces a category, usually with 的: 凡是 … 的人 / 凡是 … 的事.

■ 31. 一律 (uniformly / without exception)

173. 一律

一律 applies a rule uniformly.

174. C. 同学们都来了。

A description takes 都; 一律 states a rule.

175. 学生一律穿校服。

Group + 一律 + verb.

176. True.

It is formal and rule-like.

177. Model answer: 门票一律二十元。

Check your answer:

- 一律 states a rule or uniform treatment; for "all" in a description, use 都: 学生都来了 – "All the students have arrived."
- It goes before the verb, after the group: 学生一律 …, not 一律学生 ….

■ 32. 再 + Adj + 也 (however ..., still ...)

178. 也

再 + Adj，也 ….

179. B. However expensive it is, I'll buy it.

再 + adjective + 也 means "no matter how …": 再贵我也要买 "However expensive it is, I'll still buy it." Here 再 does not mean "again".

180. 你再解释也没用。

再 + verb，也 + result.

181. True.

再 … 也 … is the shorter form.

182. Model answer: 工作再忙，她也会回家吃饭。

Check your answer:

- Do not drop 也: 再忙也来, not 再忙来.
- 再 + Adj here is a condition, not "again": 再冷 = however cold.

■ 33. 唯独 (only X – the exception)

183. 唯独

The one exception in the group – 唯独.

184. 他什么都不怕，唯独怕打针。

The group statement first, then 唯独 + the exception.

185. A. 除了他以外，大家都到了。

除了 X 以外，都 … = everyone except X.

186. A. 只有他知道答案。

For a plain "only", 只有.

187. True.

唯独 names the one exception.

188. Model answer: 我们家的人都喜欢吃辣的，唯独我妹妹一点儿辣都不能吃。周末大家都想去爬山，唯独爸爸想在家休息。

Check your answer:

- Each sentence first says what is true for the group.
- 唯独 names the one exception.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 34. 统统 (all, every single one)

189. 统统

All, every one (strong, spoken) – 统统.

190. A. 所有人都来了。

统统 can't go before a noun; use 所有.

191. 把桌子上的东西统统拿走！

把 + things + 统统 + verb.

192. A. 全部

In formal writing, 全部.

193. True.

It stresses every single one.

194. Model answer: 把这些旧书统统送给图书馆！不要的玩具也统统收起来。

Check your answer:

- 统统 comes before the verb.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- The sentences sound like strong spoken orders.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 35. 归根到底 (in the final analysis)

195. 归根到底

The basic truth after everything – 归根到底.

196. B. 他最后还是来了。

For time, use 最后; 归根到底 names a cause.

197. B. 总之

总之 = in short.

198. 归根到底，是我们计划得不好。

归根到底 starts the last sentence.

199. True.

说到底 = when it comes down to it.

200. Model answer: 有人说作业太多，有人说晚上太安静反而睡不着。归根到底，还是因为大家睡前一直在看手机。

Check your answer:

- The details come first; 归根到底 starts the last sentence.
- It names one basic cause.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 36. 很是 + Adj (a formal "very")

201. 很是

很是 + two-syllable feeling word.

202. D. 天气很是好。

很是 prefers two-syllable predicates.

203. 孩子们很是担心。

Subject + 很是 + feeling.

204. True.

It suits writing and narration.

205. Model answer: 居民们对新公园很是满意。

Check your answer:

- 很是 prefers two-syllable predicates: 很是满意, not 很是好.

- In conversation, plain 很 or 非常 sounds more natural.

■ 37. 足足 + Amount (a full / as much as)

206. 足足

足足 stresses a large amount.

207. D. 才五分钟。

才 marks an amount as small ("only five minutes"). 足足 does the opposite: it stresses that an amount is large (足足等了两个小时), so it cannot combine with 才 here.

208. 这顿饭足足花了五百块。

足足 + verb + amount.

209. True.

True. 整整 stresses a full, complete amount (整整一天 "a whole day", 整整十年 "ten full years"), often with the feeling that it is a lot.

210. Model answer: 我们足足排了三个小时的队。

Check your answer:

- 足足 stresses a large amount; for "only" a small amount use 才 / 只: 才五分钟.
- It needs a number: 足足三天, not just 足足很久.

■ 38. Verb + 得 + 倒 + Adj (a pointed note)

211. 倒

V 得倒 + Adj = pointed contrast.

212. B. 你说得倒轻松。

The pattern is verb + 得 + 倒 + adjective: 你说得倒轻松 ("You make it sound easy", implying it is not). 倒 sits inside the complement, after 得 and before the adjective, and 得 appears only once.

213. True.

倒 can mark that something is better than expected.

214. 他想得倒美，以为不复习也能通过。

想得倒美 = dream on.

215. Model answer: 你说得倒容易，谁来搬呢?

Check your answer:

- Order: verb + 得 + 倒 + adjective: 说得倒容易, not 说倒得容易.
- Not every 倒 sentence is sarcastic; tone and context decide whether it is a jab or a pleasant surprise.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 39. 未免 (rather too – a soft criticism)

216. 未免

未免 + 太 … 了 gives a soft criticism.

217. 你这样说未免有点儿不公平。

未免 + 有点儿 + adjective.

218. B. 他的要求未免太高了。

A critical judgement takes 未免, and a degree word (太) follows it.

219. B. 难免

A natural, expected result takes 难免.

220. True.

未免 makes the criticism more polite, like "isn't that a bit…?".

221. Model answer: 才工作了两天就要辞职，未免太着急了。你再试一个月吧。

Check your answer:

- 未免 is followed by 太 / 有点儿 + adjective.
- It judges the action, politely.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 40. 难以 (hard to – formal)

222. 难以

难以 + a two-syllable verb.

223. C. 难以理解

难以 takes a two-syllable verb such as 理解.

224. B. This dish tastes bad.

很难吃 = tastes bad. 难 + 吃 / 看 / 听 describe an unpleasant taste, look or sound.

225. 风景美得难以形容。

Adjective + 得 + 难以 + verb.

226. True.

Same meaning; 难以 is written style.

227. Model answer: 那次去西藏的旅行让我难以忘记。站在山顶上，眼前的风景美得难以形容。

Check your answer:

- Each 难以 is followed by a two-syllable verb.
- The sentences sound formal and fit an essay.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 41. 不止 (more than / not only)

228. 不止

不止 + amount = more than.

229. A. 不到

不到 = less than; 不止 = more than.

230. 不止他一个人这么想。

不止 + person = not only.

231. B. 不仅

不仅 … 还 … joins two clauses.

232. True.

不止 + age = more than that age.

233. Model answer: 不止年轻人喜欢这部电影，我爸妈也看了不止一遍。

Check your answer:

- One 不止 goes before a person or group, one before an amount.
- My sentences disagree politely.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 42. 将近 (nearly, just under)

234. 将近

将近 + amount = nearly.

235. B. 这座桥有一百多年了。

将近 means just under; for a little more, use 多.

236. A. 我几乎忘了。

将近 goes with amounts; 几乎 works with verbs too.

237. 他将近四十岁才结婚。

将近 + age, then 才 = not until.

238. True.

将近 + amount.

239. Model answer: 我们学校已经有将近八十年的历史了。全校将近三千名学生，每天早上将近七点就有人来上自习。

Check your answer:

- Each 将近 comes before an amount and means “just under”.
- I didn’t add 左右.

- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 43. 起码 (at the very least)

240. 起码

The minimum amount – 起码.

241. A. 起码的要求

Only 起码 can describe a noun with 的.

242. 这是做人起码的礼貌。

起码的 + noun = the most basic ….

243. True.

最起码 = at the very, very least.

244. A. 起码

起码 is spoken; 将近 is a little formal.

245. Model answer: 想通过六级，起码要认真准备半年。每天背二十个生词是起码的要求。

Check your answer:

- One 起码 sets a minimum amount; one 起码的 describes a noun.
- My advice is realistic and polite.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 44. 颇, 异常 and 万分 (formal "quite / very")

246. 颇

Written "quite" – 颇.

247. B. 万分

Extremely, with a feeling – 万分.

248. B. 今年夏天异常炎热。

万分 is for feelings; weather takes 异常.

249. True.

As an adjective, 异常 = abnormal.

250. 他的话颇有道理。

颇 + 有道理.

251. Model answer: 这次在贵家住了一个月，大家对我异常热情。对你们的照顾，我万分感谢。

Check your answer:

- 万分 goes with a feeling; 颇 / 异常 with an adjective.
- The tone is formal and polite.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 45. 接连 vs 连续 (in a row)

252. 接连

Events one right after another – 接连 (连续 also works).

253. A. 我打算连续学三个小时。

One activity going on for three hours – 连续.

254. A. 客人们陆续到了。

Over a period of time – 陆续.

255. 我们队连续三年得了冠军。

连续 + time + verb.

256. True.

Several strange things happened one after another.

257. Model answer: 昨天真倒霉：早上接连错过了两辆公交车，到了学校又发现忘了带作业。晚上我连续写了四个小时，才把作业补完。

Check your answer:

- 接连 describes separate events.
- 连续 describes something without a break.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 46. 大致 vs 大概 (roughly, in outline)

258. 大致

The main outline – 大致.

259. A. 他大概不来了。

A guess – 大概.

260. 你先说一下大致的计划。

大致的 + noun.

261. B. I understood the main points.

大致 = in outline.

262. True.

作业基本上写完了 – homework is mostly done.

263. Model answer: 这部电影大致讲的是一个小男孩寻找父亲的故事。听说明年要拍第二部，大概还是同一个导演。

Check your answer:

- 大致 gives the outline.
- 大概 makes a guess.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 47. 何必 (why bother / no need)

264. 何必

何必 = why bother (rhetorical).

265. A. There's no need for that.

It is rhetorical advice, not a request for a reason.

266. 既然他不喜欢，你又何必勉强他?

Reason, then 何必 + verb.

267. True.

不必 is the plain statement.

268. Model answer: 何必专门跑一趟？下次见面再给我就行了。

Check your answer:

- 何必 does not ask for a reason; it means "you don't need to". The answer is built in.
- 呢 often ends the question: 何必呢？– "Why bother?"

■ 48. 无非 (nothing but / merely)

269. 无非

无非是 = nothing but.

270. A. Dismissive summarising

It reduces something to the ordinary.

271. 他这么做，无非是想引起注意。

Action，无非是想 + purpose.

272. True.

无非 often sounds dismissive.

273. Model answer: 他说的无非是堵车、下雨这些理由。

Check your answer:

- What follows 无非 should be ordinary or limited; it is not for surprising facts.
- It often comes with 是 or 想 / 要: 无非是 …, 无非想 ….

■ 49. 到时候 (when the time comes)

274. 到时候

到时候再说 = deal with it then.

275. C. 当时

当时 refers to a particular moment in the past ("at that time"). 到时候 looks forward to a future moment ("when the time comes"), and 以后 / 将来 also point to the future.

276. 你现在不复习，到时候就来不及了。

Condition, then 到时候 + consequence.

277. True.

It points to a future moment already known.

278. Model answer: 到时候再说吧。

Check your answer:

- 到时候 points to a future moment; for a past "at that time", use 那时候 / 当时.
- The moment must be clear from context; 到时候 alone with no plan sounds vague.

■ 50. 迟早 / 早晚 (sooner or later)

279. 迟早

迟早 + 会 + verb.

280. 身体迟早会出问题。

Subject + 迟早 + 会 + verb.

281. B. 他迟早会来的。

迟早 points to the future, with 会.

282. A. Take the medicine once in the morning and once in the evening.

早晚 can also mean "morning and evening".

283. True.

That is exactly what "sooner or later" means.

284. Model answer: 你的成绩迟早会被父母知道的，还是早点儿告诉他们吧。别怕，他们早晚会理解你的。

Check your answer:

- 迟早 / 早晚 come after the subject, before 会.
- Both sentences point to the future.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 51. 务必 (be sure to – formal request)

285. 务必

(请) 务必 + action = a firm, polite request.

286. 请大家务必在周五之前交报告。

务必 + time + action.

287. B. 请务必不要迟到。

For "be sure not to", say 务必不要.

288. B. 必须

A standing rule usually takes 必须. 务必 urges people, often with 请, and also appears in notices.

289. True.

务必 suits notices and formal requests; 一定要 is spoken.

290. Model answer: 明天早上七点出发，请大家务必准时到学校门口。请务必不要带太多行李。

Check your answer:

- 务必 comes before the action.
- I used 务必不要 for "be sure not to".
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 52. 反之 vs 相反 and 否则 (conversely)

291. 反之

The opposite case, in writing – 反之.

292. B. 他没生气，相反，他很高兴。

The reality is the opposite of an idea – 相反.

293. A. 快点儿，要不然会迟到。

A warning in speech – 要不然 (or 否则).

294. 价格低，买的人就多；反之，买的人就少。

Condition → result; 反之 → the opposite result.

295. True.

反之 already means "in the opposite case".

296. Model answer: 睡眠充足的学生上课精神好，学习效率也高；反之，经常熬夜的学生上课容易犯困，成绩也会受到影响。

Check your answer:

- The first part has a condition and a result.
- 反之 introduces the opposite case.
- The style is formal.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 53. 不禁 / 不由得 (can't help – a reaction)

297. 不禁

Trigger first, then 不禁 + the reaction.

298. 看到这张老照片，我不禁想起了小时候。

Subject + 不禁 + reaction.

299. B. 看到他的样子，我不禁笑了。

不禁 describes a reaction that just happened, after the subject.

300. B. 我怕我会忍不住笑。

For the future, use 忍不住. 不禁 describes the moment it happened.

301. True.

不由得 can mean "leaves you no choice but".

302. Model answer: 走进老家的院子，他不禁想起了奶奶。看到墙上的照片，他不由得流下了眼泪。

Check your answer:

- Each sentence gives the trigger first, then the reaction.
- 不禁 / 不由得 come after the subject.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 54. 动不动就 (at the slightest thing)

303. 就

动不动 is always followed by 就.

304. 年轻人动不动就换工作。

Subject + 动不动 + 就 + verb.

305. A. 他经常帮助别人。

动不动就 criticises; for praise, use 经常.

306. True.

It complains that something happens too easily and too often.

307. A. 他动不动就迟到。

Keep 就 between 动不动 and the verb.

308. Model answer: 我的室友动不动就借我的东西，而且动不动就半夜打电话。

Check your answer:

- Each 动不动 is followed by 就 + verb.
- Both habits are things you don't like.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 55. 索性 (might as well / simply)

309. 索性

Reason first, then 索性 + the decision.

310. 睡不着，我索性起来看书。

Reason, then subject + 索性 + action.

311. C. 这台电脑老是坏，索性买台新的吧。

索性 introduces a decision (买台新的) after a reason.

312. B. 干脆

Only 干脆 can be an adjective.

313. True.

干脆 is more spoken; 索性 a little more written.

314. Model answer: 公共汽车四十分钟还没来，我索性走回家了。

Check your answer:

- The reason comes first.
- 索性 is followed by an action you decide to take.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 56. 顿时 (at once – a sudden change)

315. 顿时

An event, then 顿时 + the change.

316. A. 你立刻过来！

顿时 can't give an order; use 立刻.

317. 听了这句话，他顿时明白了。

Event first, then subject + 顿时 + change.

318. B. 忽然

With no event before it, 忽然.

319. True.

顿时安静了, 顿时紧张起来, 顿时感到轻松.

320. Model answer: 突然停电了，屋子里顿时一片漆黑。过了一会儿，灯又亮了，大家顿时欢呼起来。

Check your answer:

- Each 顿时 follows an event and gives a change.

- The sentences tell what happened, not a plan.
- I read them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 57. 随即 (immediately after that)

321. 随即

The second action follows at once – 随即.

322. B. 请立即离开。

随即 can't give an order; use 立即.

323. A. 随后

A little later – 随后.

324. 消息公布后，网上随即出现了很多评论。

First action, then 随即 + what followed.

325. True.

In speech, people say 马上 / 立刻.

326. Model answer: 校长宣布运动会开始，比赛随即开始。第一场比赛结束后，学生们为获胜的班级欢呼起来。

Check your answer:

- Each 随即 follows a first action.
- The sentences read like a report, not an order.
- I read them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 58. 依次 vs 轮流 and 陆续 (in turn)

327. 依次

In turn, in a fixed order – 依次.

328. B. 轮流

Taking turns again and again – 轮流.

329. B. 陆续

Arriving at different times, no fixed order – 陆续.

330. False.

It is read yīcì but means "in turn"; "once" is 一次 (yí cì).

331. 他依次介绍了三个方案。

依次 before the verb.

332. Model answer: 听到铃声后，请各班按顺序依次走出教室。到了操场，请依次站好。五分钟后，各班陆续到了操场。

Check your answer:

- 依次 gives a fixed order; 陆续 shows arriving bit by bit.
- The instructions sound like a formal notice.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 59. 大不了 (at worst; no big deal)

333. 大不了

The worst case, made to sound fine – 大不了.

334. A. 这有什么大不了的？再买一个就行了。

有什么大不了的 = what's the big deal?

335. A. 我们最多等十分钟。

A limit on a number – 最多.

336. 没赶上车也没关系，大不了打车去。

Problem, then 大不了 + fallback.

337. True.

大不了 is relaxed and spoken.

338. Model answer: 面试不成功也没什么大不了的，大不了再找别的工作。要是下雨，咱们大不了在酒店里打牌。

Check your answer:

- 大不了 names a fallback that is really acceptable.
- The tone is relaxed and kind.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 60. 专程 vs 专门 and 顺便 (specially)

339. 专程

A trip made for one purpose – 专程.

340. A. 他专门为我做了一个蛋糕。

Not a trip, so 专门.

341. B. 我去超市，顺便帮你买点儿水果。

An extra job on the way – 顺便.

342. 我们专程去杭州看西湖。

专程 + travel verb + purpose.

343. True.

专程 shows their effort.

344. Model answer: 谢谢你专程从上海赶来看我们的演出！下个月我去上海出差，顺便去看看你。

Check your answer:

- 专程 is before a travel verb.
- 顺便 is an extra job on the way.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 61. 不惜 vs 舍不得 (whatever it costs)

345. 不惜

Accepting a high cost – 不惜.

346. B. 他舍不得花钱。

Can't bear to give it up – 舍不得. 不惜花钱 means the opposite.

347. A. 为了学好中文，她不惜花了三年时间在中国生活。

Three years is a real price; looking at a watch is not.

348. 我们会不惜一切代价完成任务。

不惜一切代价 + verb.

349. True.

The cost (lying) is bad behaviour.

350. Model answer: 为了照顾生病的母亲，她不惜放弃了国外的工作。我的爷爷很节约，旧衣服总是舍不得扔。

Check your answer:

- 不惜 is followed by a real cost.
- 舍不得 shows the opposite feeling.
- I read them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 62. 默默 vs 悄悄 (silently)

351. 默默

Quiet, unseen effort – 默默.

352. A. 他悄悄地走进教室。

So as not to be noticed – 悄悄.

353. B. unsung heroes

默默无闻 = unknown, without fame.

354. 他默默地看着窗外，什么也没说。

默默地 + verb.

355. True.

默默地帮助很多人.

356. Model answer: 我们学校的保安每天很早就到了，默默地检查每一扇门。他从来不说自己有多辛苦，却记得每个学生的名字。

Check your answer:

- 默默 shows quiet effort.
- The sentences describe what the person does.
- I read them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 63. 擅自 vs 私自 and 随便 (without permission)

357. 擅自

Without permission – 擅自.

358. A. 随便坐吧!

Friendly "as you like" – 随便.

359. A. 不得擅自改变计划。

擅自 + an action that needs permission.

360. 他擅自离开了公司。

擅自 + verb.

361. True.

私自拿走了资料.

362. Model answer: 请勿擅自把书带出图书馆。不得擅自使用实验室的电脑。禁止擅自改动座位。

Check your answer:

- Each rule uses 擅自 before an action that needs permission.
- The style fits a notice.
- I read them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 64. 及早 vs 尽早 and 及时 (as early as possible)

363. 及早

Before it gets worse – 及早.

364. B. 幸亏救护车来得及时。

The timing was right – 及时.

365. B. 请尽早回复。

请尽早回复 = please reply as soon as possible.

366. 发现问题要及早解决。

及早 + verb.

367. True.

及早治疗 vs 来得及时 / 及时解决.

368. Model answer: 有不懂的地方要及早问老师，别等到考试前一天。复习计划最好尽早做好，这样时间才够用。

Check your answer:

- 及早 warns about leaving it too late.
- 尽早 asks for something to be done soon.
- I read them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 65. 当场 vs 当时 (on the spot / at that time)

369. 当场

Right there and then – 当场.

370. B. 当时我还在上大学。

A past moment, no place – 当时.

371. B. Right there, at the competition

当场 = on the spot.

372. 他当场就答应了。

当场 + (就) + verb.

373. True.

我马上来.

374. Model answer: 一个十岁的小女孩在比赛中弹了一首钢琴曲，评委当场给了她满分。当时台下的观众都站起来为她鼓掌。

Check your answer:

- 当场 joins place and time.
- 当时 refers to that past moment.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 66. 随意 vs 随便 (as you please)

375. 随意

A polite invitation – 随意.

376. A. 请勿随意触摸展品。

请勿随意 = please don't … (without permission).

377. A. 吃什么都行，随便。

Everyday "anything is fine" – 随便.

378. 不要随意丢垃圾。

不要随意 + verb.

379. True.

自由 = free.

380. Model answer: 欢迎大家！水果和饮料都在桌子上，请随意。另外，书房里的电脑是我爸爸工作用的，请勿随意使用。

Check your answer:

- 随意 is used politely in the invitation.
- 请勿随意 gives a polite rule.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 67. 丝毫 vs 毫不 and 一点儿也不 (not in the least)

381. 丝毫

Not in the slightest – 丝毫.

382. A. 她毫不犹豫地答应了。

毫不 already contains 不; 丝毫 needs its own 不.

383. B. 我一点儿也不累。

In speech, 一点儿也不; 毫不 is written and goes with two-character words.

384. 十年过去了，小镇没有丝毫变化。

没有丝毫 + noun.

385. True.

毫不 + 在乎.

386. Model answer: 比赛中她受了伤，但是她毫不犹豫地继续往前跑，丝毫没有放弃的意思。

Check your answer:

- 毫不 goes with a two-character word, without another 不.
- 丝毫 comes with 不 / 没有.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 68. 毫无 vs 毫不 and 没有 (not any at all)

387. 毫无

No … at all (written) – 毫无.

388. A. 他毫不在乎别人的看法。

Before a verb (在乎) – 毫不.

389. B. 毫无疑问，……

毫无疑问 is a set phrase.

390. 面对突然的变化，他毫无办法。

毫无 + noun.

391. True.

一点儿 …… 也没有.

392. Model answer: 我认为每天抄五十遍生词毫无意义。很多同学抄完以后毫不在乎词的意思，第二天就忘了。

Check your answer:

- 毫无 goes before a noun; 毫不 before a verb or adjective.
- The opinion is clear.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ Mixed practice

393. 果然下雨了 (as expected)。天偏偏下起雨来 (against what we wanted).

394. 他向来很守时 (always has been)。他一度想放弃 (at one point in the past).

395. 何必打车呢? 走路才五分钟。何必 asks a question that means "there is no need".

396. 凡是报了名的人，都要准时到。凡是 … 都 covers every case.

397. 果然 means "sure enough, as expected". 似乎 means "it seems": the speaker is not certain.

398. Model answer. 朋友说会下雨，果然下雨了。我们偏偏选了今天去野餐。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence each with 向来, 何必 and 凡是 …… 都.

Auxiliary words

HSK 6

来着 at the end of a sentence helps you recall something from the recent past: 你刚才说什么来着? ("What was it you just said?"). It is spoken and friendly, and it often goes with a question word when you have forgotten a detail.

Sentence + 来着 (recalling the recent past)

Form: sentence + 来着 (spoken)

- **他叫什么名字来着?** *Tā jiào shénme míngzi láizhe?* – What was his name again?
- **你刚才说什么来着?** *Nǐ gāngcái shuō shénme láizhe?* – What did you just say?
- **我昨天还看见他来着。** *Wǒ zuótiān hái kànjiàn tā láizhe.* – I saw him only yesterday.
- **那家饭馆在哪儿来着? 我上次去过。** *Nà jiā fànguǎn zài nǎr láizhe? Wǒ shàng cì qùguo.* – Where was that restaurant again? I went there last time.
- **我们几点见面来着?** *Wǒmen jǐ diǎn jiànmiàn láizhe?* – What time were we meeting again?
- **老师上课的时候讲过这个问题来着。** *Lǎoshī shàngkè de shíhou jiǎngguo zhège wèntí láizhe.* – The teacher went over this question in class, remember.

How it works. 来着 *láizhe* sits at the very end of a sentence, and it always looks back at something in the recent past that the speaker already knew or experienced.

In a **question** with a question word (什么, 哪儿, 几点, 谁), it admits that you knew the answer once and have forgotten: "… again?" It is a polite, natural way to ask for a reminder, because it tells the listener you are not asking for new information. In a **statement**, it recalls a recent event as a reminder or a mild point: 我昨天还看见他来着 ("and yet I saw him only yesterday").

他叫什么名字?	他叫什么名字来着?
asks for new information	asks to be reminded of something you knew
meeting someone new	the name is on the tip of your tongue

Watch out

- Only for the past, never the future: *wrong:* 我明天去北京来着 → 我明天去北京.
- A 来着 question uses a question word, not 吗: *wrong:* 你去过那儿来着吗? → 你去过那儿吗? or 你去过哪儿来着?
- Very colloquial: keep it out of essays and formal emails.

In a passage

小美：哎，上周跟我们一起吃饭的那个男生叫什么来着?

小丽：叫张磊啊。你忘啦?

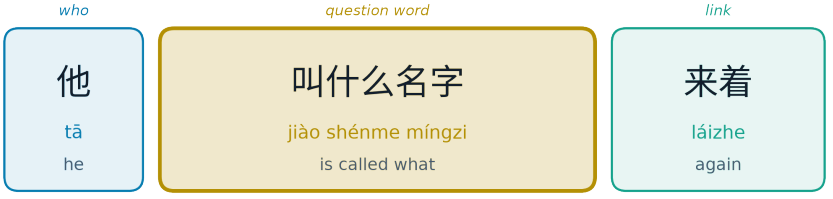
小美：对对对，张磊！他说他在哪个公司工作来着?

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

小丽：在一家银行。他还给你留了电话来着，你找找看。

Read and notice. Which 来着 lines ask for a reminder, and which one recalls a past action as a statement?

…来着: what was it again?



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “What did you say just now?” 你刚才说什么 ……?

2. What does 他叫什么名字来着? suggest?

- A. The speaker is being formal.
- B. The speaker never knew the name.
- C. The speaker knew it but has forgotten.
- D. The speaker is asking about the future.

3. Build: “I saw him only yesterday.”

Put in order: 还看见他 / 来着。/ 我昨天

4. True or false? 来着 suits formal writing. If false, correct it.

5. You met someone at a party last week and can’t recall his name. Use Sentence + 来着. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Which sentence is natural?

- A. 他叫什么名字来着?
- B. 他明天叫什么名字来着?
- C. 来着他叫什么名字?

7. You forgot what time the meeting is. Ask a colleague, casually.

8. Find and fix the problem. Someone asks 你刚才说什么来着? A classmate thinks 来着 means the person is speaking now. Correct it.

9. Use it yourself. Ask a friend to remind you where you put your keys.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 来着

来着 = what was it again?

2. C. The speaker knew it but has forgotten.

来着 at the end of a question shows that the speaker once knew the answer but has forgotten it: 他叫什么名字来着? "What was his name again?"

3. 我昨天还看见他来着。

Statement + 来着 recalls the recent past.

4. False.

False. 来着 is colloquial and belongs in conversation. In formal writing you would simply ask 他叫什么名字? or restate the information.

5. Model answer: 他叫什么名字来着?

Check your answer:

- 来着 is for things in the recent past; it cannot describe the future.
- Keep it out of formal writing; 他说什么来着 is the basic form, and 了 may also appear (他说了什么来着) depending on the sentence.

■ Mixed practice

6. A. 来着 goes at the end and recalls something you knew a moment ago; it does not go with the future.

7. 会议几点开始来着?

8. 来着 recalls the recent past: "What was it you said just now?" The speaker has forgotten and wants a reminder.

9. Model answer. 我的钥匙放在哪儿来着?

Review later. Tomorrow, use 来着 to ask about a name you have forgotten.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Conjunctions

HSK 6

Formal conjunctions for writing. 以便 and 以免 give a purpose: to make something possible, or to prevent it. 以及 joins items in a list, 则 contrasts two cases, and 总之 sums up. For arguing, 固然 admits a point before a stronger one, 并非 … 而是 corrects a wrong idea, 况且 adds a reason, 即便 … 也 holds firm whatever happens, and 进而 takes the next step. Use them in reports and essays rather than in conversation.

At a glance

- **1.** 以便 – so as to / in order to: 请留下您的电话，以便我们联系您。
- **2.** 以免 – so as to avoid: 你带上雨伞，以免淋湿。
- **3.** 以及 – as well as / and: 参加会议的有经理、工程师以及部分客户。
- **4.** 则 – while / whereas – formal contrast: 北方人爱吃面，南方人则爱吃米饭。
- **5.** 总之 – in short / in a word: 总之，我们下周五出发。
- **6.** 固然 … 但 … – admittedly …, but …: 钱固然重要，但健康更重要。
- **7.** 并非 (is not – formal); 并非 A，而是 B: 她的成功并非偶然，而是多年努力的结果。
- **8.** 况且 – besides – one more reason: 这么晚了，况且又下着雨，你就住在这儿吧。
- **9.** 即便 … 也 … – even if – formal: 即便明天下雨，比赛也会照常进行。
- **10.** 进而 – and then go further: 我们要先了解学生的需要，进而改进教学方法。
- **11.** 以致 vs 以便 and 以免 – result / goal / to avoid: 他平时不努力，以致考试没通过。

1. 以便 (so as to / in order to)

Form: action，以便 + wanted goal

- **请留下您的电话，以便我们联系您。** *Yǐbiàn wǒmen liánxì nín.* – Please leave your number so that we can contact you.
- **我们把时间提前了，以便大家早点儿回家。** – We moved the time earlier so everyone can get home sooner.
- **请保留收据，以便日后查询。** – Please keep the receipt for future reference.

How it works. 以便 *yǐbiàn* “so that, in order to (make it easier)” starts the second clause and gives the purpose the action serves. It is formal, typical of instructions and notices.

为了 + goal，action	action，以便 / 好 + goal	action，以免 + bad result
goal first	goal after (好 is spoken)	avoid something
为了方便联系，请留下电话	留个电话，好联系你	带伞，以免淋湿



2. 以免 (so as to avoid)

Form: precaution，以免 + unwanted result

- **你带上雨伞，以免淋湿。** *Nǐ dàishang yǔsǎn, yǐmiǎn línshī.* – Take an umbrella so you don't get soaked.
- **开车时不要看手机，以免发生事故。** – Don't look at your phone while driving, to avoid accidents.
- **把药放在高处，以免孩子拿到。** – Keep the medicine up high, out of children's reach.

How it works. 以免 *yǐmiǎn* "so as to avoid, lest" begins the second clause. The first clause is the precaution, and the second is the bad result to avoid. It is formal, typical of instructions and notices; in speech use 免得 / 省得 (早点儿走，免得堵车).

以免 + bad result	以便 + good goal
以免迟到	以便准时到

Watch out

- No 不 after 以免: *wrong:* 以免不迟到 → 以免迟到 (以免 already contains the "not").

以免: so as to avoid



3. 以及 (as well as / and)

Form: A、B 以及 C

- **参加会议的有经理、工程师以及部分客户。** … *yǐjí bùfen kèhù.* – Attending were the manager, the engineers and some of the clients.
- **大家讨论了活动的时间、地点以及费用。** – We discussed the time, place and cost of the event.
- **怎么去以及什么时候去，还没决定。** – How and when to go haven't been decided.

How it works. 以及 *yǐjí* is a formal "and, as well as" before the **last** item of a list. It often adds something of a slightly different kind or lower rank (部分客户). Unlike 和, it can easily join long phrases and question clauses.

和	及	以及
everyday "and"	compact written: 学生及家长	formal, joins longer phrases

Watch out

- Use it once, before the last item: *wrong:* A 以及 B 以及 C → A、B 以及 C.
- In casual speech, 和 is more natural.

以及: as well as (formal list)



4. 则 (while / whereas – formal contrast)

Form: A + comment，B + 则 + contrasting comment ·(如果) condition，则 + result

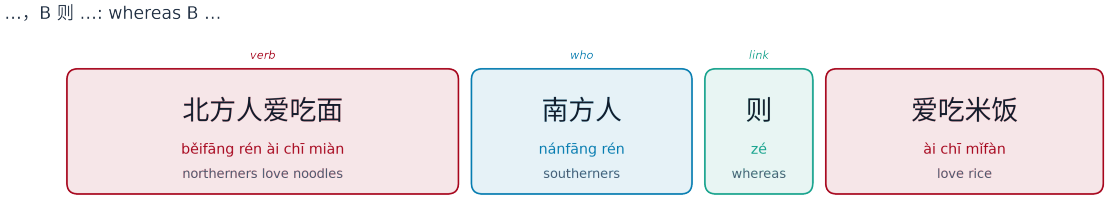
- **北方人爱吃面，南方人则爱吃米饭。** *Nánfāng rén zé ài chī mǐfàn.* – Northerners love noodles, whereas southerners prefer rice.
- **他喜欢安静，我则喜欢热闹。** – He likes quiet; I, on the other hand, like a lively atmosphere.
- **如果温度超过一百度，则水会沸腾。** – If the temperature exceeds 100 degrees, the water will boil.

How it works. 则 *zé* is written and formal. In a contrast, it sits **after** the second subject: "whereas". In a condition, it means "then", as in the proverb 欲速则不达 "more haste, less speed".

北方冷，而南方暖和	北方冷，南方则暖和
而 starts the clause	则 follows the subject

Watch out

- *wrong:* 则南方人爱吃米饭 → 南方人则爱吃米饭.
- In speech, use 而 / 但是 / 可是.



5. 总之 (in short / in a word)

Form: points …。总之，+ summary

- **价格太高，质量一般，服务也不好。总之，我不推荐。** *Zǒngzhī, wǒ bù tuījiàn.* – The price is too high, the quality average, the service poor. In short, I don't recommend it.
- **总之，我们下周五出发。** – So, to sum up: we leave next Friday.

How it works. 总之 *zǒngzhī* "in short, all in all" begins a sentence that pulls earlier points into one conclusion. 总而言之 is the full, more formal version.

总之	反正
sums up the points made	anyway (my mind is made up): 反正我不去

Watch out

- 总之 comes **after** the details; it can't open a discussion.



6. 固然 … 但 … (admittedly …, but …)

Form: A 固然 + point，但 / 可是 + stronger point · A 固然 …，B 也 …

- **钱固然重要，但健康更重要。** *Qián gùrán zhòngyào, dàn jiànkāng gèng zhòngyào.* – Money is important, of course, but health matters more.
- **这个办法固然好，但太费时间了。** – This method is good, admittedly, but it takes too much time.
- **考上大学固然好，考不上也没关系。** – Getting into university is good, of course, but not getting in is OK too.

How it works. 固然 accepts a point ("I grant you that") before you move to a stronger one with 但. With 也, both sides are fine. 固然 usually goes after the subject.

虽然 … 但是 …	固然 … 但 …	固然 … 也 …
although … but … (two facts)	admittedly … but … (an argument)	… is good, … is fine too

Watch out

- *wrong:* 钱重要固然 → 钱固然重要 (usually after the subject).



7. 并非 (is not – formal); 并非 A，而是 B

Form: 并非 + noun / idea · 并非 A，而是 B

- **她的成功并非偶然，而是多年努力的结果。** *Tā de chénggōng bìngfēi ǒurán, ér shì duō nián nǔlì de jiéguǒ.* – Her success was no accident; it was the result of years of hard work.
- **这件事并非你想的那么简单。** – This matter is not as simple as you think.
- **他并非不想帮忙，而是实在没有时间。** – It's not that he doesn't want to help; he really has no time.

How it works. 并非 is a formal 并不是. It denies an idea someone might hold; 而是 then gives the real answer.

并非偶然	并不难	不是 A，而是 B
is no accident (formal, + noun / idea)	isn't hard at all (+ adjective)	not A but B (everyday)

Watch out

- 并非 already contains 是: write 这并非我的错, not 并非是.
- Before a plain adjective, use 并不.



8. 况且 (besides – one more reason)

Form: reason，况且 (又 / 也 / 还) + reason，(decision)

- **这么晚了，况且又下着雨，你就住在这儿吧。** *Zhème wǎn le, kuàngqiě yòu xià zhe yǔ, nǐ jiù zhù zài zhèr ba.* – It's so late, and besides, it's raining – just stay here.
- **这个工作离家太远，况且工资也不高，我不想去。** – This job is too far from home, and besides, the pay isn't high. I don't want it.
- **他已经二十岁了，况且还有朋友帮他。** – He's twenty already, and besides, he has friends to help him.

How it works. 况且 adds one more reason, often a stronger one, to back up a suggestion or decision. 又, 也 or 还 often follow it.

而且	况且	何况
and also (neutral)	besides (one more reason)	let alone; also "besides"

Watch out

- 况且 brings a reason, not the decision.
- It joins clauses, not single words.



9. 即便 … 也 … (even if – formal)

Form: 即便 + possible case，subject + 也 / 都 / 还 + result ·即便如此，…

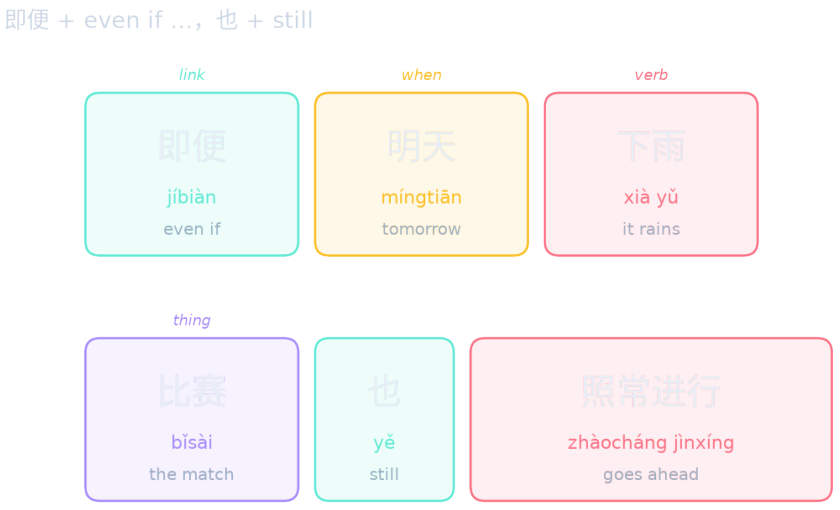
- **即便明天下雨，比赛也会照常进行。** *Jíbiàn míngtiān xià yǔ, bǐsài yě huì zhàocháng jìnxíng.* – Even if it rains tomorrow, the races will go ahead as usual.
- **即便你不同意，我也要试一试。** – Even if you don't agree, I still want to give it a try.
- **这份工作很辛苦。即便如此，他也从来不抱怨。** – The job is very hard. Even so, he never complains.

How it works. 即便 is a formal 即使 ("even if"). The second clause, with 也, says the result stays the same. 即便如此 means "even so".

即使 / 即便 / 哪怕	尽管
even if (usually a possible case; neutral / formal / spoken)	although (a real fact)

Watch out

- Pair 即便 with 也, not 但是.
- 也 comes after the subject of the second clause.



10. 进而 (and then go further)

Form: (先) step 1，进而 + a further step

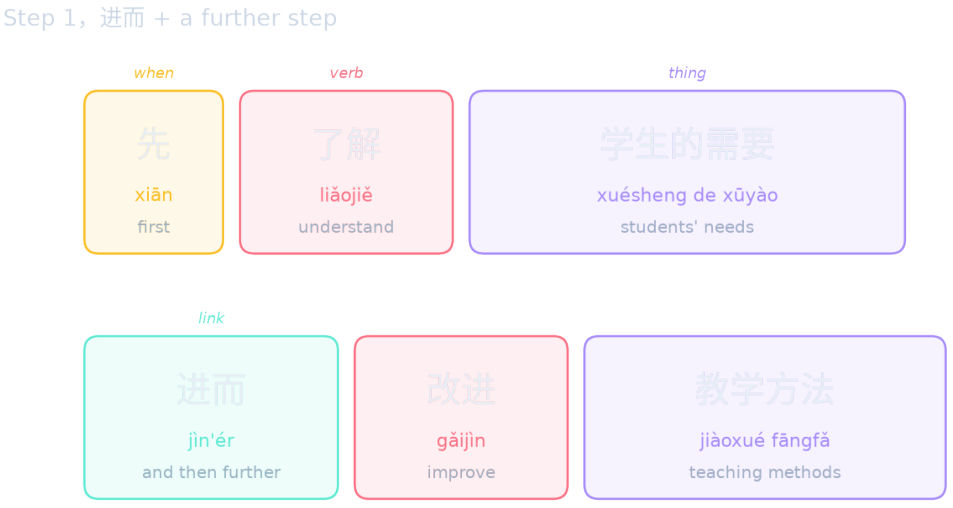
- **我们要先了解学生的需要，进而改进教学方法。** *Wǒmen yào xiān liǎojiě xuésheng de xūyào, jìn'ér gǎijìn jiàoxué fāngfǎ.* – We must first understand students' needs, and then go on to improve our teaching methods.
- **他先学会了说，进而学会了写。** – He learned to speak first, and then went on to learn to write.
- **这次活动让大家认识了彼此，进而成为了好朋友。** – The event let everyone get to know each other, and then become good friends.

How it works. 进而 says one step leads on to a further, higher step. It is formal and the subject usually stays the same.

然后	从而	进而
then (time order)	and so (the result)	and then, further (the next step up)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我先吃饭，进而去学校 → 我先吃饭，然后去学校.



11. 以致 vs 以便 and 以免 (result / goal / to avoid)

Form: cause，以致 + (bad) result ，…，以便 + goal ，…，以免 + result to avoid

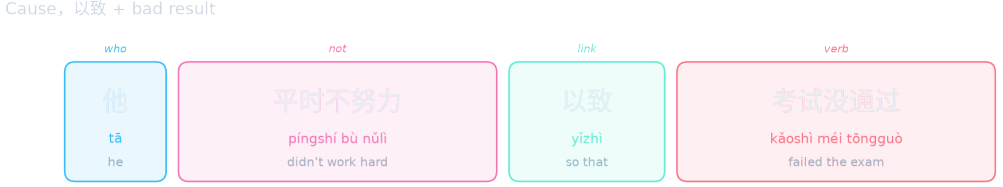
- **他平时不努力，以致考试没通过。** *Tā píngshí bù nǔlì, yǐzhì kǎoshì méi tōngguò.* – He didn't work hard during the term, so in the end he failed the exam.
- **请提前通知，以便大家安排时间。** – Please give notice in advance, so that everyone can plan their time.
- **出门带上伞，以免淋雨。** – Take an umbrella so you don't get wet.

How it works. 以致 links a cause to a result, usually bad; it is formal. A goal you want takes 以便; a result you want to avoid takes 以免. 以至于 is close to 以致 but can also mean "to the point that".

以致考试没通过	以便大家安排时间	以免淋雨
with the result that he failed	so that everyone can plan	so as not to get wet

Watch out

- A purpose takes 以便, not 以致.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 以便 (so as to / in order to)

1. Complete (notice): "Register in advance so we can make arrangements." 请提前报名，…… 我们安排。

2. "Take a coat so you don't catch a cold." Which fits? 带件外套，_____ 感冒。

- A. 为了
- B. 以免
- C. 以便
- D. 所以

3. Build: "Keep the receipt for future reference."

Put in order: ， / 以便 / 日后查询。/ 请保留收据

4. True or false? 为了 usually comes before the action, 以便 after it. If false, correct it.

5. A hotel receptionist asks for your phone number at check-in. Use 以便. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 以免 (so as to avoid)

6. Complete: "Keep the receipt so you don't lose it." 请保存好收据，…… 丢失。

7. "Leave early so you arrive on time." Which fits? 早点儿出发，_____ 准时到达。

- A. 免得
- B. 以便
- C. 省得
- D. 以免

8. Build: "Put the medicine up high so children can't reach it."

Put in order: 以免 / 把药放在高处 / ， / 孩子拿到。

9. True or false? 免得 is a spoken equivalent of 以免. If false, correct it.

10. The forecast is uncertain, and you're heading out for the whole day. Use 以免. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 以及 (as well as / and)

11. Complete (formal): "Students, teachers and parents all took part." 学生、老师 …… 家长都参加了。

12. Which suits casual speech? "I bought apples and bananas."

- A. 我买了苹果以及香蕉。
- B. 我买了苹果和香蕉。
- C. 我买了以及苹果香蕉。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- D. 我买了苹果及香蕉。

13. Build: “We discussed the time, place and cost.”

Put in order: 时间、地点 / 以及 / 费用。/ 我们讨论了

14. True or false? 以及 can join longer phrases than 及. If false, correct it.

15. A company report lists everyone who took part in a project. Use 以及. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 则 (while / whereas – formal contrast)

16. Complete (written): “He likes quiet, whereas I like bustle.” 他喜欢安静，我 …… 喜欢热闹。

17. Which is correct?

- A. 则北方冷，南方暖和。
- B. 北方冷，南方则暖和。
- C. 北方冷，则南方暖和。
- D. 北方则冷，南方暖和则。

18. Build: “More haste, less speed.”

Put in order: 则 / 不达。/ 欲速

19. True or false? 而 starts the contrasting clause; 则 follows its subject. If false, correct it.

20. An essay compares eating habits across China. Use 则. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 总之 (in short / in a word)

21. Sum up: “In short, the event was a success.” ……，这次活动很成功。

22. “Whatever you say, I’m not going anyway.” Which fits? _____ 我不去。

- A. 然后
- B. 比如
- C. 总之
- D. 反正

23. Build: “In short, I don’t recommend it.”

Put in order: 不推荐。/ 总之 / ，/ 我

24. True or false? 总之 can open a conversation before any points are made. If false, correct it.

25. At the end of a long discussion about holiday plans, you sum up. Use 总之. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 6. 固然 … 但 … (admittedly …, but …)

26. Complete: “Money is important, of course, but health matters more.” 钱 …… 重要，但健康更重要。

27. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 钱固然重要，但健康更重要。
- B. 钱重要固然，但健康更重要。
- C. 钱但重要，固然健康更重要。

28. Build: “Getting into university is good, of course, but not getting in is OK too.”

Put in order: 也没关系。 / 固然好， / 考上大学 / 考不上

29. True or false? 固然 … 但 … shows you agree with one point before making a stronger one. If false, correct it.

30. In 考上大学固然好，考不上也没关系, what does the speaker think?

- A. Both results are acceptable.
- B. Not getting in is better.
- C. Only getting in is acceptable.

31. Write one essay sentence on “Should students have part-time jobs?”: admit one advantage with 固然, then give a stronger concern with 但. Use 固然 … 但 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 并非 (is not – formal); 并非 A，而是 B

32. Complete: “It’s not that he doesn’t want to help; he really has no time.” 他并非不想帮忙，…… 实在没有时间。

33. Build: “Her success was no accident.”

Put in order: 偶然。 / 成功 / 她的 / 并非

34. “This problem isn’t hard at all.” Which is best?

- A. 这个问题并非难。
- B. 这个问题并不难。

35. True or false? 并非 means the same as 并不是. If false, correct it.

36. Which pair means “not A, but B”?

- A. 并非 … 但是 …
- B. 并非 … 而是 …
- C. 并非 … 而且 …

37. Write one essay sentence that corrects a common belief, using 并非 A，而是 B. Topic: why some students do badly in exams. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 8. 况且 (besides – one more reason)

38. Complete: "It's so late, and besides, it's raining – just stay here." 这么晚了，…… 又下着雨，你就住在这儿吧。

39. Build: "The job is too far, and besides, the pay isn't high."

Put in order: 这个工作太远，/ 不高。/ 况且 / 工资也

40. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 太贵了，况且我也不需要，不买了。
- B. 我喜欢苹果况且香蕉。
- C. 太贵了，况且不买了。

41. True or false? 何况 can mean "let alone", as in 连大人都不懂，何况小孩呢. If false, correct it.

42. Which word adds one more reason? 这么晚了，_____ 又下着雨，你就住在这儿吧。

- A. 况且
- B. 因为
- C. 但是

43. A friend suggests going hiking tomorrow. Turn it down politely with two reasons joined by 况且. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 9. 即便 ... 也 ... (even if – formal)

44. Complete: "Even if you don't agree, I still want to try." 即便你不同意，我 …… 要试一试。

45. Build: "Even if it rains tomorrow, the match will still go ahead."

Put in order: 比赛 / 照常进行。/ 即便明天下雨，/ 也会

46. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 即便很累，也他坚持跑完了。
- B. 即便很累，他也坚持跑完了。
- C. 即便很累，但是他坚持跑完了。

47. "Although it rained, the match went ahead." (It really did rain.) Which word is the usual choice? _____ 下雨了，比赛还是进行了。

- A. 尽管
- B. 即便

48. True or false? 即便如此 means "even so". If false, correct it.

49. Write two sentences for an essay about keeping promises: one with 即便 … 也 …, one starting with 即便如此. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 10. 进而 (and then go further)

50. Complete: “He learned to speak first, and then went on to learn to write.” 他先学会了说，…… 学会了写。

51. “I’ll eat first, then go to school.” Which word fits? 我先吃饭，_____ 去学校。

- A. 进而
- B. 然后
- C. 从而

52. Build: “The event let everyone get to know each other, and then become good friends.”

Put in order: 好朋友。/ 成为了 / 这次活动让大家认识了彼此，/ 进而

53. Which word names the RESULT an action achieved? 他每天练习，_____ 提高了口语水平。

- A. 从而
- B. 进而

54. True or false? 进而 is formal and suits plans and reports. If false, correct it.

55. Write one sentence for a study plan: a first step you will take, and a further step it will lead to (进而). Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 11. 以致 vs 以便 and 以免 (result / goal / to avoid)

56. Complete: “He didn’t work hard, so in the end he failed the exam.” 他平时不努力，…… 考试没通过。

57. “Please give notice in advance, so that everyone can plan their time.” 请提前通知，_____ 大家安排时间。

- A. 以便
- B. 以致

58. “Take an umbrella so you don’t get wet.” 出门带上伞，_____ 淋雨。

- A. 以免
- B. 以便
- C. 以致

59. Build: “He was so careless that he even wrote his name wrong.”

Put in order: 把名字都 / 他太粗心了，/ 写错了。/ 以致

60. True or false? 以致 usually introduces a bad or unwanted result. If false, correct it.

61. Write a short formal note to a club: one sentence with 以致 about a problem last time, and one with 以便 about what to do next time. Use 以致 or 以便 and 以免. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

62. Choose 以便 or 以免: 请提前到，…… 准时开始。/ 请提前到，…… 迟到。

63. Choose 则 or 以及: 北方干燥，南方 …… 湿润。/ 学生、老师 …… 家长都参加了。

64. Sum up a discussion with 总之.

65. Find and fix the problem. A report says 北京的政策很严格，上海则也很严格. What is wrong with 则 here?

66. Use it yourself. Give an instruction to bring an umbrella so as not to get wet, then sum up with 总之.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 以便 (so as to / in order to)

1. 以便

以便 + positive purpose.

2. B. 以免

Avoiding something takes 以免.

3. 请保留收据，以便日后查询。

Action，以便 + purpose.

4. True.

That is their typical order.

5. Model answer: 请留下您的电话，以便我们联系您。

Check your answer:

- 以便 introduces a goal you want to reach; to say what you want to avoid, 以免 is shorter: 带伞，以免淋湿 – "Take an umbrella so you don't get wet."
- It starts the second clause, after the action.

■ 2. 以免 (so as to avoid)

6. 以免

以免 + unwanted result.

7. B. 以便

A positive goal takes 以便.

8. 把药放在高处，以免孩子拿到。

Precaution，以免 + unwanted result.

9. True.

Both introduce something to avoid.

10. Model answer: 你带上雨伞，以免淋湿。

Check your answer:

- What follows 以免 is something bad you want to avoid; for a positive goal use 以便: 早点儿出发，以便准时到 – "Leave early so you can arrive on time."
- 以免 already means "so as not to": 以免迟到, not 以免不迟到 (that would mean the opposite).

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 以及 (as well as / and)

11. 以及

以及 joins the last item.

12. B. 我买了苹果和香蕉。

以及 and 及 are formal connectors used in writing and announcements. In casual speech two nouns are joined with 和: 我买了苹果和香蕉.

13. 我们讨论了时间、地点以及费用。

A、B 以及 C.

14. True.

以及 can link phrases and clauses.

15. Model answer: 参加会议的有经理、工程师以及部分客户。

Check your answer:

- In casual speech, 和 sounds more natural: 我买了苹果和香蕉 – "I bought apples and bananas."
- In a simple list, put 以及 once, before the last item: A、B 以及 C.

■ 4. 则 (while / whereas – formal contrast)

16. 则

Subject + 则 marks the contrast.

17. B. 北方冷，南方则暖和。

In a contrast, 则 follows the subject of the second clause.

18. 欲速则不达。

A fixed saying with 则 = then.

19. True.

That is their difference in position.

20. Model answer: 北方人爱吃面，南方人则爱吃米饭。

Check your answer:

- In a contrast, 则 follows the subject: 南方人则 …, not 则南方人 ….
- It is formal; in speech, 而 or 但是 / 可是 are more natural.

■ 5. 总之 (in short / in a word)

21. 总之

总之 introduces the summary.

22. D. 反正

A mind already made up = 反正.

23. 总之，我不推荐。

总之，+ summary.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

24. False.

It sums up points already made.

25. Model answer: 总之，我们下周五出发。

Check your answer:

- 总之 comes after the points it sums up; it cannot open a conversation.
- It closes a discussion; for "for example" use 比如.

■ 6. 固然 … 但 … (admittedly …, but …)

26. 固然

固然 accepts the first point before the stronger one.

27. A. 钱固然重要，但健康更重要。

固然 goes before the adjective, usually right after the subject.

28. 考上大学固然好，考不上也没关系。

固然 …，… 也 … = both are fine.

29. True.

That is the key difference from a plain 虽然 … 但是 ….

30. A. Both results are acceptable.

With 也, both sides are fine.

31. Model answer: 打工固然能让学生积累经验，但如果影响学习，就得不偿失了。

Check your answer:

- 固然 comes after the subject and accepts a real point.
- 但 / 可是 brings a stronger point.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 7. 并非 (is not – formal); 并非 A，而是 B

32. 而是

并非 A，而是 B gives the real answer.

33. 她的成功并非偶然。

并非 + the idea being denied.

34. B. 这个问题并不难。

Before a plain adjective, use 并不. 并非 prefers a noun or a whole idea (并非难事).

35. True.

非 = 不是, so 并非 = 并不是, in formal style.

36. B. 并非 … 而是 …

The frame is 并非 A，而是 B (or 不是 A，而是 B).

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

37. Model answer: 很多学生考不好，并非因为不聪明，而是因为没有找到合适的学习方法。

Check your answer:

- 并非 introduces the wrong idea and 而是 the real one.
- I did not add 是 after 并非.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 8. 况且 (besides – one more reason)

38. 况且

况且 adds a further reason before the suggestion.

39. 这个工作太远，况且工资也不高。

况且 + another reason (often with 也 / 又 / 还).

40. A. 太贵了，况且我也不需要，不买了。

况且 adds a reason (我也不需要); the decision comes after.

41. True.

何况 = let alone. 况且 is mainly used to add one more reason.

42. A. 况且

况且 adds a further reason before the suggestion.

43. Model answer: 明天我得写报告，况且天气预报说会下雨，我们下周再去吧。

Check your answer:

- The second reason is introduced by 况且.
- The decision or suggestion comes after the reasons.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 9. 即便 ... 也 ... (even if – formal)

44. 也

即便 pairs with 也 in the second clause.

45. 即便明天下雨，比赛也会照常进行。

即便 …, subject + 也 + result.

46. B. 即便很累，他也坚持跑完了。

即便 pairs with 也, which goes after the subject.

47. A. 尽管

For a real fact, 尽管 (although) is the usual word; 即便 mostly means “even if”.

48. True.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

It starts a sentence after a fact you have just given.

49. Model answer: 即便遇到困难，我们也应该遵守诺言。有时候这样做会吃亏。即便如此，信用还是最重要的。

Check your answer:

- 即便 pairs with 也 in the second clause.
- 即便如此 follows a fact I have just stated.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 10. 进而 (and then go further)

50. 进而

进而 introduces the further step.

51. B. 然后

A plain next step in time is 然后.

52. 这次活动让大家认识了彼此，进而成为了好朋友。

Step 1, then 进而 + the further step.

53. A. 从而

从而 = and so (the result). 进而 = and then go further (a next step).

54. True.

In speech, people would say 然后再 … or 再进一步 ….

55. Model answer: 我打算先每天听中文新闻，进而用中文讨论新闻。

Check your answer:

- The second step goes further than the first.
- 进而 links them, and the subject stays the same.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ 11. 以致 vs 以便 and 以免 (result / goal / to avoid)

56. 以致

Cause, then 以致 + the bad result.

57. A. 以便

A goal you want – 以便.

58. A. 以免

Something to avoid – 以免.

59. 他太粗心了，以致把名字都写错了。

Cause first, then 以致 + the result.

60. True.

For a goal, use 以便.

61. Model answer: 上次活动没有提前报名，以致很多同学没有座位。下次请大家提前一周报名，以便我们安排场地。

Check your answer:

- 以致 gives a bad result of a cause.
- 以便 gives a goal.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ Mixed practice

62. 以便准时开始 (so that it can happen)。以免迟到 (so that it does not happen).

63. 南方则湿润 (contrast)。学生、老师以及家长 (and, in a list).

64. 总之，这个方法又省时间又省钱。总之 starts a short conclusion.

65. 则 contrasts two cases, so it needs a difference: 北京的政策很严格，上海则比较灵活. For two similar cases, use 也: 上海也很严格.

66. Model answer. 请带上雨伞，以免淋湿。总之，出门前要看天气预报。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence with 以便 and one with 以免.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Nouns

HSK 6

Two formal noun patterns. 本 + noun means “this” or “our own” in notices: 本校, 本次活动, 本人. Word + 性 turns a word into a quality, like English -ness or -ity: 重要性 (importance), 可能性 (possibility).

At a glance

- **1.** 本 + Noun – this / our / one’s own: 本店营业时间为早上九点到晚上十点。
- **2.** Word + 性 – -ness / -ity: 这款车的安全性很高。

1. 本 + Noun (this / our / one’s own)

Form: 本 + organisation / time / person noun (formal “this, our, one’s own”)

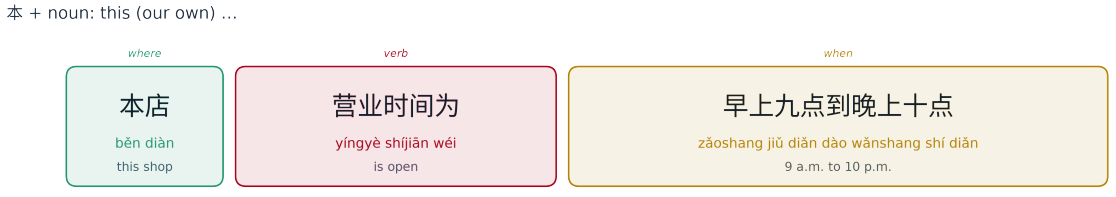
- **本店营业时间为早上九点到晚上十点。** *Běn diàn yíngyè shíjiān wéi …* – This shop is open from 9 a.m. to 10 p.m.
- **本周五下午停水。** – There is no water this Friday afternoon.
- **需要本人签字。** – The person concerned must sign in person.

How it works. In notices and announcements, 本 *běn* refers to the speaker’s own organisation (本店, 本校, 本公司) or to the current period (本周, 本月, 本次). 本人 means “I myself / the person concerned”, and 本地 means local (本地人, 本地菜).

本 + noun	Everyday equivalent
本店	我们店
本校	我们学校
本周	这个星期

Watch out

- No 的 or measure word: *wrong:* 本个公司 → 本公司.
- 本 is also the measure word for books (一本书); before an organisation or time word it means “this / our”.



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. Word + 性 (-ness / -ity)

Form: word + 性 → abstract noun (-ness, -ity) + 高 / 大 / 强 …

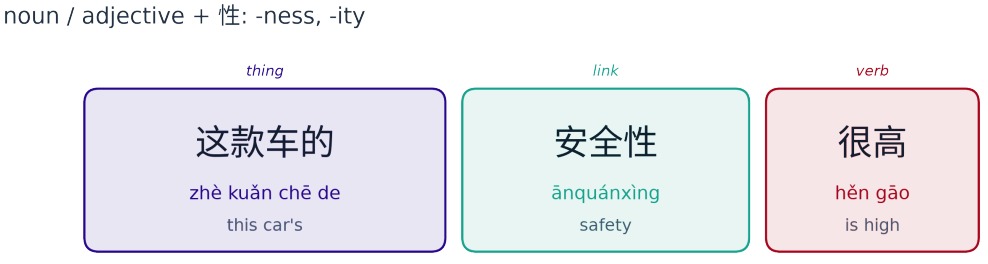
- **这款车的安全性很高。** *Zhè kuǎn chē de ānquánxìng hěn gāo.* – This car's safety rating is very high.
- **下雨的可能性很大。** – There's a high chance of rain.
- **这个工作的灵活性比较强。** – This job is quite flexible.

How it works. 性 *xìng* turns a word into an abstract quality noun, common in reports and science. Being a noun, it takes 高 / 大 / 强 / 低 as its description.

Base	+ 性	Meaning
安全	安全性	safety
重要	重要性	importance
可能	可能性	possibility, likelihood
必要	必要性	necessity
积极	积极性	enthusiasm, motivation

Watch out

- *wrong:* 很安全性 → 安全性很高 (or just 很安全).
- Measurable qualities often use 度 instead: 速度, 难度, 温度.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 本 + Noun (this / our / one's own)

1. Complete the notice: "This shop is closed on Mondays." …… 店周一休息。

2. Which suits casual conversation?

- A. 我们学校的老师很好。
- B. 本个学校的老师很好。
- C. 本校的老师很好。

- D. 本的学校老师很好。

3. Match each word to its meaning.

- (1) 本周
- (2) 本人
- (3) 本地
- (4) 本公司
- A. this week
- B. local
- C. our company
- D. the person themself

4. True or false? In 一本书, 本 means "this". If false, correct it.

5. A notice at a shop door announces new opening hours. Use 本 + Noun. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. Word + 性 (-ness / -ity)

6. Complete: "the importance of this matter" 这件事的重要 ……

7. Which is correct?

- A. 这款车很安全性。
- B. 这款车的安全性很高。
- C. 这款车安全性的很。
- D. 这款车的安全很性。

8. Match each word to its meaning.

- (1) 可能性
- (2) 必要性
- (3) 难度
- (4) 速度
- A. speed
- B. difficulty
- C. possibility
- D. necessity

9. True or false? 下雨的可能性很大 means "rain is very likely". If false, correct it.

10. A report compares two electric cars on several qualities. Use Word + 性. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Write in a notice: “This activity is open to all students of our school.”

12. Turn 重要 into a noun and use it.

13. Find and fix the problem. A classmate sees 本校 and thinks 本 is the measure word for books. What does it mean here?

14. Use it yourself. Write a formal notice using 本, then explain the importance of sleep using 性.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 本 + Noun (this / our / one's own)

1. 本

本店 = this shop (formal).

2. A. 我们学校的老师很好。

In speech, 我们学校 is natural.

3. (1) A: 本周 = this week; (2) D: 本人 = the person themself; (3) B: 本地 = local; (4) C: 本公司 = our company

本 + noun = this / our / one's own.

4. False.

Here it is the measure word for books.

5. Model answer: 本店营业时间为早上九点到晚上十点。

Check your answer:

- 本店 / 本校 belong to notices and announcements; in conversation, say 我们店 / 我们学校.
- 本 + noun needs no 的 or measure word: 本公司, not 本个公司.

■ 2. Word + 性 (-ness / -ity)

6. 性

重要 + 性 = importance.

7. B. 这款车的安全性很高。

Word + 性 is a noun, described with 高.

8. (1) C: 可能性 = possibility; (2) D: 必要性 = necessity; (3) B: 难度 = difficulty; (4) A: 速度 = speed

性 forms abstract properties; 度 measurable ones.

9. True.

可能性很大 = high probability.

10. Model answer: 这款车的安全性很高。

Check your answer:

- Word + 性 is a noun: describe it with 高 / 大 / 强: 安全性很高, not 很安全性.
- Not every word takes 性; learn the common ones: 积极性, 重要性, 必要性, 可能性.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ Mixed practice

11. 本次活动面向本校全体学生。

12. 大家都知道运动的重要性。重要 + 性 = importance.

13. Before a noun in formal Chinese, 本 means "this, our own": 本校 = this school, 本人 = I myself.

14. Model answer. 本次讲座将于周五举行。大家都应该了解睡眠的重要性。

Review later. Tomorrow, make two words with 性 and use each in a sentence.

Particles

HSK 6

Five particles. 是否 and 与否 both ask "whether or not" in formal writing; …… 之 …… is a literary 的; 嘛 says something is obvious; and 呗 gives a relaxed, shrugging answer. Notice the range: the first three are formal, the last two are spoken.

At a glance

- **1.** 是否 – whether or not: 请说明您是否申请过本项目。
- **2.** … 与否 – whether … or not: 能否赢得比赛，取决于平时的训练。
- **3.** Noun + 之 + Noun – a literary 的: 他是我最好的朋友之一。
- **4.** Statement + 嘛 – self-evident: 周末嘛，人当然多。
- **5.** Sentence + 呗 – a casual shrug: 不会就学呗，又不难。

1. 是否 (whether or not)

Form: (subject) + 是否 + verb / adjective

- **请说明您是否申请过本项目。** *Qǐng shuōmíng nín shìfǒu shēnqǐngguo běn xiàngmù.* – Please state whether you have applied for this programme before.
- **您是否同意这个方案?** – Do you agree with this proposal?
- **我不知道他是否会来。** – I don't know whether he'll come.

How it works. 是否 *shìfǒu* "whether (or not)" is the formal 是不是. It goes before the verb, in direct questions and in reported ones (不知道 …… 是否 ……).

Spoken	Formal
你是不是累了?	您是否需要帮助?
能不能按时完成	能否按时完成

Watch out

- No 吗: *wrong:* 您是否同意吗? → 您是否同意?
- 是否 already covers yes and no, so don't add 不 unless you mean it (是否不同意 asks whether you disagree).



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. … 与否 (whether … or not)

Form: issue / predicate + 与否 (+ 取决于 / 关系到 …)

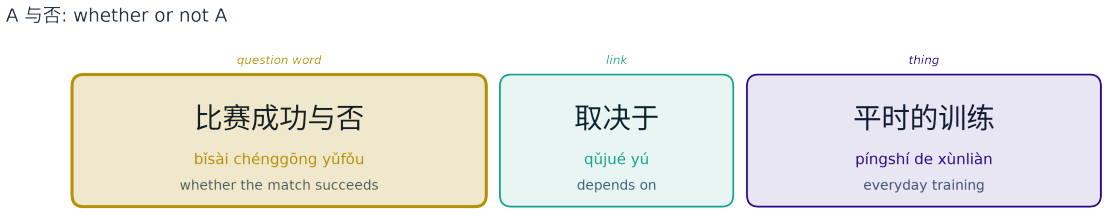
- **比赛成功与否，取决于平时的训练。** *Bǐsài chénggōng yǔfǒu, qǔjué yú píngshí de xùnliàn.* – Whether the match goes well depends on everyday training.
- **方法正确与否，关系到结果。** – Whether the method is right affects the result.
- **不管你喜欢与否，都要完成。** – Whether you like it or not, you have to finish.

How it works. 与否 *yǔfǒu* "whether … or not" goes **after** the word in question and turns the phrase into a noun-like topic. It is formal and common with 取决于, 关系到, 不管 and 无论.

是否成功	成功与否	成不成功
before the verb (formal)	after the word (formal topic)	spoken A-not-A

Watch out

- *wrong:* 与否成功 → 成功与否.



3. Noun + 之 + Noun (a literary 的)

Form: modifier + 之 + noun (literary 的) · fixed 之 phrases

- **西安是中国的古都之一。** *Xī'ān shì Zhōngguó de gǔdū zhī yī.* – Xi'an is one of China's ancient capitals.
- **这是原因之一。** – This is one of the reasons.
- **朋友之间应该互相帮助。** – Friends should help each other.
- **一年之计在于春。** – The year's plans are made in spring.

How it works. 之 *zhī* is the classical form of 的. Today it lives on in fixed phrases, titles and four-character sayings rather than in free speech.

Phrase	Meaning
…… 之一	one of …
…… 之间	between …
…… 之前 / 之后	before / after …
成功之路	the road to success
中国之最	China's greatest

Watch out

- Don't replace everyday 的 with 之: *wrong:* 我之书 → 我的书.

… 之一: one of (a literary title)



4. Statement + 嘛 (self-evident)

Form: reason / topic + 嘛, comment · statement + 嘛

- **周末嘛，人当然多。** *Zhōumò ma, rén dāngrán duō.* – Well, it's the weekend; of course it's crowded.
- **手工做的嘛，贵一点儿很正常。** – It's handmade, after all, so it's normal for it to cost a bit more.
- **快点儿嘛！** – Come on, hurry up!

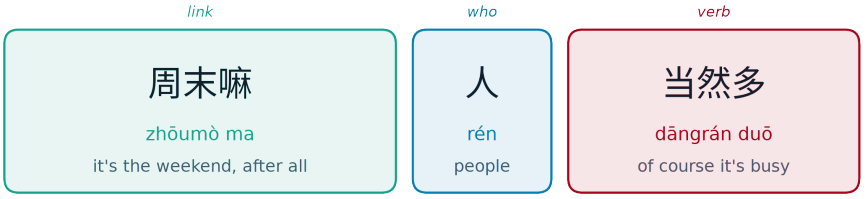
How it works. 嘛 *ma* presents something as obvious, a reason the listener should accept. After a topic (周末嘛) it sets up an obvious explanation; at the end of a request it softly insists. It is casual.

吗	嘛	吧	呗
yes/no question	it's obvious	suggestion or guess	shrug: no big deal
你知道吗?	你知道嘛	走吧	不会就学呗

Watch out

- Don't confuse 嘛 with 吗 in writing.
- Leave 嘛 out of formal texts.

嘛: it's obvious (of course)



5. Sentence + 呗 (a casual shrug)

Form: sentence + 呗 (often with 就)

- **不会就学呗，又不难。** *Bú huì jiù xué bei, yòu bù nán.* – If you can't, just learn it; it isn't hard.
- **不想去就别去呗。** – If you don't want to go, then don't.
- A: **我们去哪儿吃？** B: **随便呗。** – "Where shall we eat?" "Wherever, I don't mind."

How it works. 呗 *bei* ends a statement with a shrug: the answer is simple, no big deal. It often follows a 就 clause (不 …… 就 …… 呗).

嘛	呗	吧
explaining the obvious	shrugging it off	suggesting
周末嘛，人多	人多就人多呗	走吧

Watch out

- It can sound careless or impatient: avoid it with teachers and in formal situations.
- 呗 ends a statement, never a question.

呗: just do it, simple



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 是否 (whether or not)

1. Complete (form): "Please state whether you need a receipt." 请说明您 …… 需要发票。

2. Which is correct?

- A. 您同意是否?
- B. 是否您同意吗?
- C. 您是否同意?
- D. 您是否同意吗?

3. Build: "I don't know whether he'll come."

Put in order: 会来。 / 我不知道 / 他 / 是否

4. True or false? 是不是 is the spoken equivalent of 是否. If false, correct it.

5. The form asks a yes-or-no question about your previous applications. Use 是否. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. ... 与否 (whether ... or not)

6. Complete: "Whether it succeeds or not depends on training." 成功 ……，取决于训练。

7. Which word order is correct for 是否?

- A. 成功是否与
- B. 是否成功与否
- C. 成功是否
- D. 是否成功

8. Build: "Whether you like it or not, you must finish."

Put in order: ， / 都要 / 不管你喜欢与否 / 完成。

9. True or false? In speech, 喜不喜欢 is more natural than 喜欢与否. If false, correct it.

10. A coach explains what really decides a match. Use … 与否. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. Noun + 之 + Noun (a literary 的)

11. Complete: "one of the reasons" 原因 …… 一

12. Which sounds most natural in conversation?

- A. 这是我之书。
- B. 这是之我书。
- C. 这是书之我。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- D. 这是我的书。

13. Match each phrase to its meaning.

- (1) 之间
- (2) 之前
- (3) 之后
- (4) 之一
- A. one of
- B. before
- C. after
- D. between

14. True or false? 之 is common in titles and set phrases. If false, correct it.

15. You see a museum banner introducing a famous city. Use Noun + 之 + Noun. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. Statement + 嘛 (self-evident)

16. Complete: "It's handmade, after all – of course it's pricey." 手工做的 ……，贵一点儿很正常。

17. Which is a yes/no question?

- A. 你知道嘛。
- B. 你知道呗。
- C. 你知道吗?
- D. 周末嘛。

18. Build: "It's the weekend – of course it's crowded."

Put in order: 周末嘛 / 当然多。/ ， / 人

19. True or false? 快点儿嘛！ is a soft, insistent urging. If false, correct it.

20. Your friend complains about the crowds at the shopping mall on a Saturday. Use Statement + 嘛. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. Sentence + 呗 (a casual shrug)

21. Shrug: "If you don't want to go, just don't." 不想去就别去 ……。

22. In which situation is 呗 least appropriate?

- A. Chatting with a close friend
- B. Replying to a classmate's text
- C. Answering a question from your teacher in class
- D. Joking with a sibling

23. Build: "If he's not coming, so be it."

Put in order: 呗。/ 就算了 / 他不来

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

24. True or false? 呗 can end a question. If false, correct it.

25. Your friend worries she doesn't know how to cook the dish for the party. Use Sentence + 呗. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

26. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 请确认是否参加吗。
- B. 请确认是否参加。
- C. 请确认参加是否吗。

27. Rewrite with 与否: 这个计划能不能成功，要看大家。

28. A friend asks what to do now that the shop is closed. Shrug with 呗.

29. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 请确认是否参加吗. Correct it.

30. Use it yourself. Ask whether a plan can work with 是否, then say the same with 与否.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 是否 (whether or not)

1. 是否

是否 + verb.

2. C. 您是否同意?

是否 already makes the question; no 吗.

3. 我不知道他是否会来。

Embedded question with 是否.

4. True.

True. 是否 ("whether") is formal and written: 是否参加. In speech the same meaning is expressed by the affirmative-negative form 是不是 (or 参加不参加).

5. Model answer: 请说明您是否申请过本项目。

Check your answer:

- 是否 already makes it a question: 您是否同意? ("Do you agree?"), not 您是否同意吗?
- Do not add 不 after it: 是否同意, not 是否不同意 (unless you really mean "whether you disagree").

■ 2. ... 与否 (whether ... or not)

6. 与否

X 与否 = whether X or not.

7. D. 是否成功

是否 goes before the verb; 与否 goes after.

8. 不管你喜欢与否，都要完成。

不管 X 与否，都 ….

9. True.

True. 与否 ("or not") is formal and written (成功与否). In speech you use the affirmative-negative question: 你喜不喜欢?

10. Model answer: 能否赢得比赛，取决于平时的训练。

Check your answer:

- 与否 follows the predicate or issue being considered. Two-syllable examples are common, but syllable count alone does not decide whether the phrase is grammatical.
- In speech, use A-not-A: 成不成功 / 喜不喜欢.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. Noun + 之 + Noun (a literary 的)

11. 之

之一 = one of.

12. D. 这是我的书。

之 is the classical, written equivalent of 的. In conversation you say 这是我的书; 之 survives mainly in titles and set phrases.

13. (1) D: 之间 = between; (2) B: 之前 = before; (3) C: 之后 = after; (4) A: 之一 = one of

Fixed phrases with literary 之.

14. True.

True. 之 appears in titles, slogans and fixed expressions: 成功之路, 一年之计在于春. In ordinary sentences 的 is used.

15. Model answer: 西安是中国的古都之一，有“ 世界四大古都之一 ”之称。

Check your answer:

- Do not replace every 的 with 之 in speech; 我之书 sounds archaic. Say 我的书.
- 之 often sits between two-syllable words or in four-character set phrases: 一年之计在于春 – “Spring is the time to plan for the year.”

■ 4. Statement + 嘛 (self-evident)

16. 嘛

嘛 presents the reason as obvious.

17. C. 你知道吗?

吗 asks; 嘛 states the obvious.

18. 周末嘛，人当然多。

Topic + 嘛, then the comment.

19. True.

True. After a request, 嘛 makes it softer and slightly coaxing while still insistent: 快点儿嘛！“Come on, hurry up!”

20. Model answer: 周末嘛，人当然多。

Check your answer:

- 吗 asks a yes/no question; 嘛 states something obvious. 你知道吗? asks; 你知道嘛 means “you know that, obviously”.
- 嘛 is casual; leave it out of formal writing.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 5. Sentence + 呗 (a casual shrug)

21. 呗

呗 = no big deal.

22. C. Answering a question from your teacher in class

呗 can sound careless with superiors.

23. 他不来就算了呗。

Sentence + 呗.

24. False.

False. 呗 ends a statement, often a suggestion or an "obviously" remark: 不会就学呗 "If you can't, just learn it." It is not a question particle.

25. Model answer: 不会就学呗，又不难。

Check your answer:

- 呗 can sound careless or impatient; avoid it with teachers or in formal situations.
- It is a statement, never a question: no question mark.

■ Mixed practice

26. B. 是否 already asks the question, so 吗 is not used.

27. 这个计划成功与否，要看大家。与否 follows the word it questions.

28. 明天再来呗。呗 makes the answer sound easy and relaxed.

29. 是否 already asks "whether or not", so drop 吗: 请确认是否参加.

30. Model answer. 这个计划是否可行，还要讨论。这个计划可行与否，还要讨论。

Review later. Tomorrow, write one formal question with 是否.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Prepositions

HSK 6

Formal prepositions that give the basis for a decision. 鉴于 means “in light of, given”; 按照 means following a plan or rule; 根据 gives the evidence for a conclusion; and 据 is a short formal form of 根据, often in 据报道 and 据说.

At a glance

- **1.** 鉴于 – in light of / given: 鉴于台风即将到来，全市学校明天停课。
- **2.** 按照 vs 根据 – in accordance with vs based on: 按照公司规定，根据调查结果，我们决定取消这次活动。
- **3.** 根据 vs 据 – based on vs formal shorthand: 据报道，今年的游客人数增加了两成。

1. 鉴于 (in light of / given)

Form: 鉴于 + situation，decision / measure

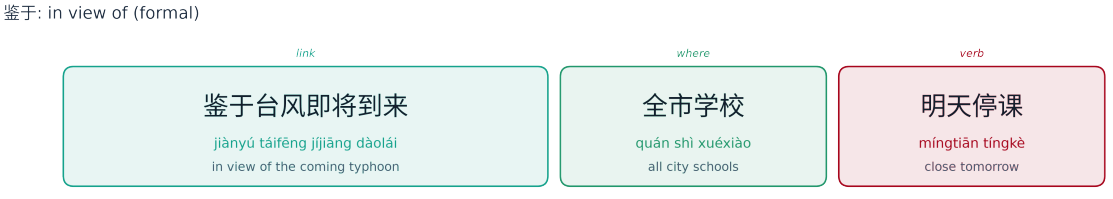
- **鉴于台风即将到来，全市学校明天停课。** *Jiànyú táifēng jíjiāng dàolái …* – In view of the approaching typhoon, all city schools will close tomorrow.
- **鉴于他的表现，公司决定给他升职。** – In view of his performance, the company has decided to promote him.
- **鉴于天气原因，我们决定推迟比赛。** – Given the weather, we have decided to postpone the match.

How it works. 鉴于 *jiànyú* “in view of, given” states the situation behind a **decision**. It belongs to notices, reports and formal letters, and usually opens the sentence; the main clause states the measure taken.

由于 / 因为	鉴于
why something happened	why a decision is being made
由于下雨，比赛取消了	鉴于天气，我们决定推迟

Watch out

- Don’t use it for everyday causes: *wrong:* 鉴于我饿了，我吃饭.



2. 按照 vs 根据 (in accordance with vs based on)

Form: 按照 + rule / plan / order + action · 根据 + evidence / source + judgement

- **按照公司规定，根据调查结果，我们决定取消这次活动。** *Ànzhào … gēnjù …* – In line with company rules and based on the survey results, we've decided to cancel the event.
- **请按照顺序排队。** – Please queue in order.
- **根据天气预报，明天有雨。** – According to the forecast, it will rain tomorrow.

How it works. 按照 *ànzhào* means **following** a standard: you act as the rule, plan or order says. 根据 *gēnjù* means **resting on** evidence or a source: a judgement or decision is drawn from it.

按照	根据
按照计划 · 按照规定 · 按照顺序	根据调查 · 根据研究 · 根据他的说法
preposition only	also a noun: 你有什么根据?

Watch out

- Evidence takes 根据: *wrong:* 按照研究 → 根据研究. 根据规定 is fine when justifying a decision.



3. 根据 vs 据 (based on vs formal shorthand)

Form: 根据 + source / evidence · 据 + reporting verb (据说, 据报道 …)

- **据报道，今年的游客人数增加了两成。** *Jù bàodào …* – According to reports, tourist numbers are up 20% this year.
- **据说他要出国了。** – Word is he's going abroad.

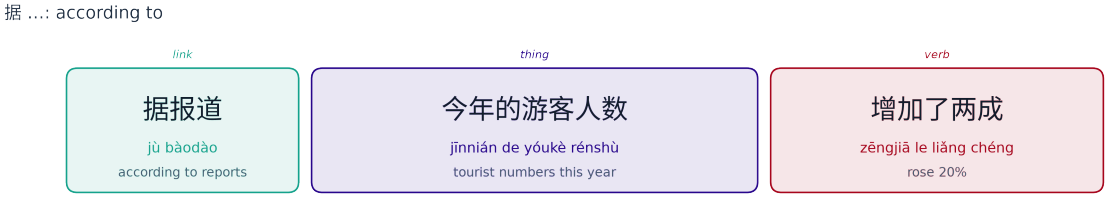
- **根据这份报告，问题已经解决了。** – According to this report, the problem has been solved.

How it works. 根据 introduces any source or evidence, in speech and writing. 据 *jù* is a compact formal form, mostly fixed before a verb of reporting. 据说 is common even in speech; the others are formal.

Phrase	Meaning
据说	it is said
据报道	according to reports
据统计	according to statistics
据了解	it is understood

Watch out

- Before an ordinary noun phrase, use 根据: 根据这份报告.
- Only 根据 is also a noun (“grounds”).
- 两成 means 20% (一成 = 10%).



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 鉴于 (in light of / given)

1. Complete (notice): “In view of the weather, the match is postponed.” …… 天气原因，比赛推迟。

2. Which suits a casual explanation to a friend?

- A. 我饿了鉴于。
- B. 因为我饿了，我们去吃饭吧。
- C. 鉴于饿，吃饭。
- D. 鉴于我饿了，我们去吃饭吧。

3. Build: “In view of his performance, the company promoted him.”

Put in order: 鉴于他的表现 / 公司决定 / 给他升职。/ ，

4. True or false? 鉴于 typically justifies a decision. If false, correct it.

5. The city government announces closures as a typhoon approaches. Use 鉴于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 按照 vs 根据 (in accordance with vs based on)

6. Complete: "Please queue in order." 请 …… 顺序排队。

7. "Based on the survey, most students like online classes." Which fits? _____ 调查，大多数学生喜欢网课。

- A. 按照
- B. 关于
- C. 对于
- D. 根据

8. Build: "What grounds do you have for saying that?"

Put in order: 根据? / 有什么 / 你这么说

9. True or false? 根据天气预报 means "based on the weather forecast". If false, correct it.

10. A company memo explains how a decision was made. Use 按照 or 根据. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 根据 vs 据 (based on vs formal shorthand)

11. Complete: "It is said that he's going abroad." …… 说他要出国了。

12. Which is safer before a plain noun phrase? "based on this report"

- A. 根这份报告
- B. 据这份报告
- C. 根据这份报告
- D. 据说这份报告

13. Match each phrase to its meaning.

- (1) 据报道
- (2) 据统计
- (3) 据说
- A. according to statistics
- B. it is said
- C. according to reports

14. True or false? 据 can be used as a noun meaning "grounds". If false, correct it.

15. You read a news story citing an official source. Use 根据 or 据. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

16. Choose 按照 or 根据: …… 计划，我们明天出发。/ …… 调查，大部分学生每天运动。

17. Write formally: “Given the limited time, the meeting is shortened.”

18. Find and fix the problem. A notice says 鉴于场地有限，本次活动需要预约. A classmate thinks everyone has already booked. Correct it.

19. Use it yourself. Write a formal decision: given the limited time, each speaker has five minutes.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 鉴于 (in light of / given)

1. 鉴于

鉴于 + situation, decision.

2. B. 因为我饿了，我们去吃饭吧。

鉴于 ("in view of") is formal and used in official writing. When explaining something casually to a friend, 因为 is the natural choice.

3. 鉴于他的表现，公司决定给他升职。

鉴于 + basis, then the decision.

4. True.

It states the basis for what will be done.

5. Model answer: 鉴于台风即将到来，全市学校明天停课。

Check your answer:

- 鉴于 introduces the basis for a decision or measure; it is not for casual causes (use 因为).
- A 鉴于 phrase often comes first to state the basis. Its position can vary; check that the main decision remains a complete clause.

■ 2. 按照 vs 根据 (in accordance with vs based on)

6. 按照

Following an order or rule = 按照.

7. D. 根据

Evidence for a conclusion = 根据.

8. 你这么说有什么根据?

根据 as a noun = grounds.

9. True.

根据 introduces the source of a judgement.

10. Model answer: 按照公司规定，根据调查结果，我们决定取消这次活动。

Check your answer:

- To follow a rule, plan or order, use 按照: 按照计划进行 ("Proceed according to plan"). 根据规定 is also correct, but it justifies a decision: "on the basis of the rules".
- Evidence for a conclusion: 根据研究, not 按照研究.

■ 3. 根据 vs 据 (based on vs formal shorthand)

11. 据

据说 = it is said.

12. C. 根据这份报告

Before a noun phrase, 根据 is the safe choice.

13. (1) C: 据报道 = according to reports; (2) A: 据统计 = according to statistics; (3) B: 据说 = it is said

据 + reporting verb.

14. False.

False. On its own 据 is a preposition, "according to" (据报道). The noun "grounds, basis" is 根据 (你有什么根据？); 据 has this meaning only inside compounds like 证据.

15. Model answer: 据报道，今年的游客人数增加了两成。

Check your answer:

- 据 usually takes a reporting verb directly: 据报道, 据统计. Before a plain noun phrase, 根据 is safer: 根据这份报告 – "According to this report."
- 据说 is common even in speech; the other 据 phrases are formal.

■ Mixed practice

16. 按照计划 (following the plan)。根据调查 (based on the evidence).

17. 鉴于时间有限，会议缩短为一个小时。

18. The notice gives a reason (space is limited) and a rule (you need to book). It says nothing about who has booked.

19. Model answer. 鉴于时间有限，每位发言人只有五分钟。

Review later. Tomorrow, write one sentence with 按照 and one with 根据.

Sentence patterns – rhetoric & emphasis

HSK 6

Rhetorical patterns that make an argument stronger. Some ask a question that expects agreement (岂不是, 莫非), some insist (非 …… 不可, 非得 …… 不可), some compare choices (与其 …… 宁可, 莫过于) and some organise reasons (一来 …… 二来 ……, 由此). Each one is a fixed frame, so learn both halves together.

At a glance

Questions that persuade

- **1.** 岂不是 – wouldn't that be …?: 你不去的话，岂不是白花钱了?
- **2.** 莫非 – could it be that …?: 莫非今天放假?

Insisting

- **3.** 非 (要) … 不可 – simply must / insist on: 下这么大的雨，他非要去不可。
- **4.** 非得 … 不可 – absolutely must: 你烧得这么厉害，非得去医院不可。

Comparing and choosing

- **5.** 与其 A，宁可 / 宁愿 B – rather than … would rather: 与其在车里等，我宁可走路去。
- **6.** 莫过于 – nothing is more … than: 最开心的莫过于周末全家一起吃饭。
- **7.** 跟 … 似的 – just like / as if: 我的手冷得跟冰似的。
- **8.** 不愧是 – truly worthy of: 不愧是冠军，他跑得太快了!

Organising an argument

- **9.** 一来 … ，二来 … – firstly …, secondly …: 一来上班方便，二来房租也不贵。
- **10.** 由此 – from this / hence: 大多数学生每天睡不到七个小时，由此可见，学习压力很大。
- **11.** 兼 – doubling as / concurrently: 他是我们公司的经理兼技术员。
- **12.** 由 … 做主 – for … to decide: 这是你的人生，由你自己做主。

1. 岂不是 (wouldn't that be …?)

Form: (condition，) + (subject) + 岂不是 + obvious conclusion?

- **你不去的话，岂不是白花钱了?** *Nǐ bú qù dehuà, qǐ bú shì bái huā qián le?* – If you don't go, isn't that money wasted?
- **现在去的话，岂不是要迟到?** – If we go now, won't we be late?
- **你这么说，岂不是承认自己错了?** – By saying that, aren't you admitting you were wrong?

How it works. 岂不是 *qǐ bú shì* is a rhetorical "wouldn't that be …?": the speaker is sure of the answer and points out a consequence, often after a condition. It is

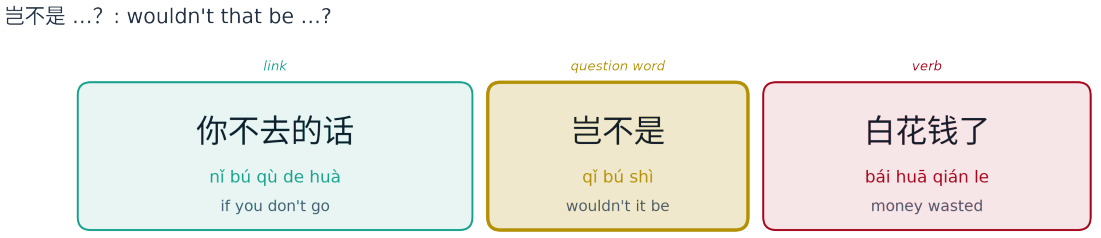
exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

somewhat literary; speech uses 那不就 …… 了吗? (那不就白花钱了吗?).

难道…… 吗?	岂不是……?
challenges a belief: 难道你不知道吗?	draws out a consequence: 那岂不是白跑一趟?

Watch out

- Don't answer it as a real question; it is making a point.



2. 莫非 (could it be that ...?)

Form: 莫非 + guess + (不成)?

- **莫非今天放假?** *Mòfēi jīntiān fàngjià?* – Could it be that today's a holiday?
- **他一直不接电话, 莫非出了什么事?** – He hasn't picked up all day; could something have happened?
- **莫非你忘了不成?** – Don't tell me you've forgotten?

How it works. 莫非 *mòfēi* introduces a surprised, suspicious guess: the speaker thinks it may be true but isn't sure. It is literary, and 不成 at the end adds force. Speech uses 是不是 or 难道.

难道 …… 吗?	莫非 ……?
challenge: expects "no"	suspicion: suspects "yes"
难道你不知道吗?	莫非他病了?

Watch out

- A guess, not a statement of fact.

莫非 …? : could it be that …?



3. 非 (要) … 不可 (simply must / insist on)

Form: subject + 非 (要) + verb + 不可 / 不行

- **下这么大的雨，他非要去不可。** *Tā fēi yào qù bù kě.* – It's pouring, and he insists on going.
- **这个问题非解决不可。** – This problem absolutely must be solved.
- **我说不用，她非要请客不可。** – I said there was no need, but she insisted on paying.

How it works. 非 …… 不可 is a double negative: "not doing it is not acceptable", so it must happen. It expresses **necessity** (this has to be done, no other way) or, with 要, a person's **insistence**. 不行 / 不成 can replace 不可; in speech the end is sometimes dropped (他非要去).

必须 / 一定要	非 …… 不可
must (plain)	must, no way around it (emphatic)

Watch out

- The verb goes in the middle: *wrong:* 非不可去 → 非去不可.

非 … 不可: absolutely must



4. 非得 ... 不可 (absolutely must)

Form: subject + 非得 (*fēiděi*) + verb (+ 不可 / 不行)

- **你烧得这么厉害，非得去医院不可。** *Fēiděi qù yīyuàn bù kě.* – With a fever like that, you absolutely have to go to hospital.
- **这份报告非得今天交不可。** – This report has to be in today.
- **他非得自己做，谁帮忙都不要。** – He insists on doing it himself and won't accept help.
- **你非得今天去吗?** – Do you really have to go today?

How it works. 非得 is the spoken version of 非 …… 不可, with 得 read *děi* "must". It expresses necessity or stubborn insistence, and 不可 / 不行 at the end adds force but can be dropped.

必须	非 …… 不可	非得 …… (不可)
neutral, written	emphatic	emphatic, spoken

Watch out

- 得 is read *děi* here (*wrong: fēi de → fēi děi*).

非得 … 不可: really have to



5. 与其 A，宁可 / 宁愿 B (rather than ... would rather)

Form: 与其 + rejected A，(subject) + 宁可 / 宁愿 + chosen B · 与其 A，不如 B

- **与其在车里等，我宁可走路去。** *Yǔqí zài chē li děng, wǒ nìngkě zǒulù qù.* – Rather than wait in the car, I'd rather walk.
- **与其抱怨，不如想办法。** – Rather than complain, better to find a solution.
- **与其花钱买，我宁愿自己做。** – I'd rather make it myself than spend money buying one.

How it works. The option after 与其 *yǔqí* is **rejected**, and the one after 宁可 / 宁愿 / 不如 is **chosen**. 宁可 and 宁愿 give a firm personal choice, often with a sacrifice; 不如 recommends the better option.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Pattern	Rejected option
与其 A，宁可 B	first
宁可 B，也不 A	second
与其 A，不如 B	first (recommendation)

Watch out

- 宁 is read *nìng*.
- Don't swap the halves: 与其 always marks the option you're giving up.



6. 莫过于 (nothing is more … than)

Form: (最) + adjective + 的 + 莫过于 + X

- **最开心的莫过于周末全家一起吃饭。** *Zuì kāixīn de mòguò yú …* – Nothing makes me happier than the family eating together at weekends.
- **人生最大的幸福莫过于做自己喜欢的事。** – Life's greatest happiness is doing what you love.
- **学习语言最好的方法莫过于多说多练。** – There's no better way to learn a language than speaking and practising a lot.

How it works. 莫过于 *mòguò yú* "nothing exceeds" names X as the top example, the one nothing beats. It is formal and emphatic, popular in essays and speeches.

最重要的是健康	最重要的莫过于健康
plain statement	stronger: nothing is more important

Watch out

- Put one top example after it, not a list.

莫过于: nothing is more ... than



7. 跟 ... 似的 (just like / as if)

Form: (adjective + 得 +) 跟 / 像 + X + 似的 (*shìde*)

- **我的手冷得跟冰似的。** *Wǒ de shǒu lěng de gēn bīng shìde.* – My hands are as cold as ice.
- **他高兴得跟孩子似的。** – He was as happy as a child.
- **他说话的样子，好像什么都知道似的。** – The way he talks, you'd think he knew everything.

How it works. 跟 / 像 X 似的 *shìde* makes a vivid comparison, "like X", or an imagined one, "as if". It can follow a 得 degree phrase (冷得跟冰似的) or describe a noun (跟孩子似的脾气). It is spoken; writing prefers 像 …… 一样 or 仿佛.

像冰一样冷	冷得跟冰似的
neutral, written too	spoken, lively

Watch out

- 似的 is read *shìde* (*wrong: sìde → shìde*).

跟 ... 似的: just like



8. 不愧是 (truly worthy of)

Form: (subject) + 不愧 (是) + title / identity, + evidence

- **不愧是冠军，他跑得太快了！** *Búkuì shì guànjūn!* – A true champion. He's so fast!
- **这本书不愧是畅销书，我一个晚上就看完了。** – This book deserves to be a bestseller; I finished it in one night.
- **他不愧是老师，解释得清清楚楚。** – He's a real teacher; he explained it perfectly clearly.

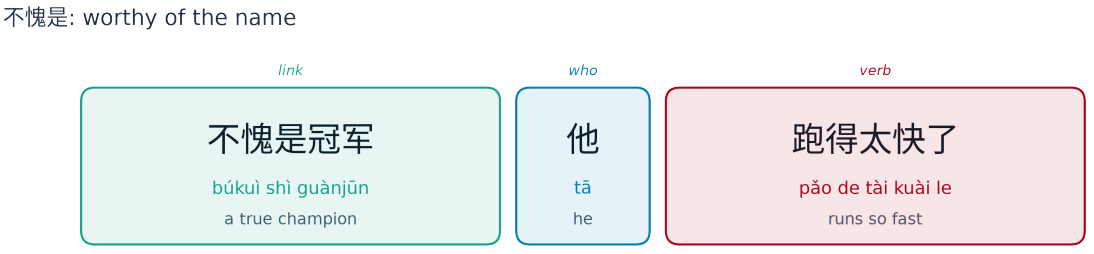
How it works. 不愧 *búkuì* "not ashamed to be" praises someone or something for living up to a name, role or reputation. Evidence of the achievement comes before or after.

果然	不愧是
as expected: 他果然赢了	truly worthy of a title: 他不愧是冠军

They often appear together: 他果然赢了，不愧是冠军.

Watch out

- Praise only: for "doesn't deserve", say 名不副实 or 配不上.



9. 一来 … ，二来 … (firstly …, secondly …)

Form: choice, 一来 + reason 1, 二来 + reason 2 (, 三来 …)

- **我住在公司附近，一来上班方便，二来房租也不贵。** *Yīlái …, èrlái …* – I live near the office: for one thing it's convenient, for another the rent isn't high.
- **我坐地铁，一来快，二来不堵车。** – I take the subway: it's fast, and there are no traffic jams.
- **他学中文，一来是为了工作，二来是喜欢中国文化。** – He's learning Chinese partly for work and partly because he likes Chinese culture.

How it works. 一来 ……, 二来 …… "for one thing … for another" lists short, parallel reasons supporting one decision. It is mostly spoken.

一来 …… 二来 ……	首先 …… 然后 ……	一方面 …… 另一方面 ……
reasons for a choice	steps in order	two aspects, sometimes contrasting



10. 由此 (from this / hence)

Form: evidence / event，由此 + 可见 / 看来 / 产生 …

- **大多数学生每天睡不到七个小时，由此可见，学习压力很大。** *Yóucǐ kějiàn* – Most students sleep under seven hours a night, which suggests that study pressure is high.
- **工厂关闭了，由此产生了很多失业问题。** – The factory closed, and many unemployment problems followed from it.
- **由此看来，这个办法行不通。** – Judging from this, the method won't work.

How it works. 由此 *yóucǐ* "from this" links what has just been said to a conclusion or a consequence. It is written and analytical, and appears mostly in fixed forms:

Phrase	Meaning
由此可见	it can be seen from this
由此看来	judging from this
由此产生	arise from this

Watch out

- The evidence must come first; 由此 can't open a text.
- 因此 "therefore" is the general logical link: 他病了，因此没来.
- A conclusion is only as strong as its evidence: say what the data shows.

由此可见: from this we can see



11. 兼 (doubling as / concurrently)

Form: role A + 兼 + role B · 兼 + job (verb) · 兼职

- **他是我们公司的经理兼技术员。** *Jīnglǐ jiān jìshùyuán.* – He's our company's manager and also its technician.
- **这间屋子是客厅兼餐厅。** – This room is both the living room and the dining room.
- **他兼了两份工作。** – He holds two jobs at once.
- **她在咖啡馆做兼职。** – She has a part-time job at a café.

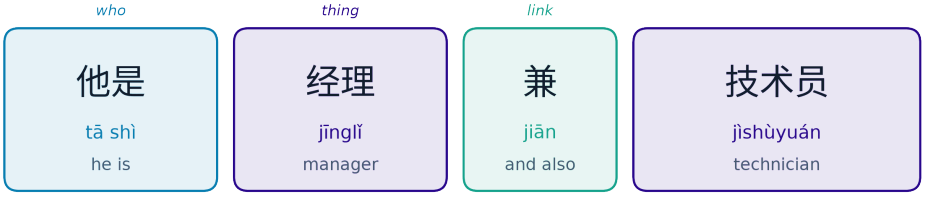
How it works. 兼 *jiān* joins two roles or functions held **at the same time by one person or thing**. It is compact and formal.

兼	又 …… 又 …… / 既 …… 又 ……	和
two roles, one holder	two qualities: 又便宜又好	two different people
司机兼导游	既聪明又努力	经理和技术员 (two people)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 很好兼很便宜 → 又好又便宜.

A 兼 B: also serving as



12. 由 … 做主 (for … to decide)

Form: matter + 由 + person + 做主 · person + 做 (不了) 主

- **这是你的人生，由你自己做主。** *Yóu nǐ zìjǐ zuòzhǔ.* – It's your life; it's up to you to decide.
- **家里的大事都由爷爷做主。** – Grandpa makes all the big family decisions.
- **这件事谁做主?** – Who decides about this?
- **我做不了主。** – It's not my decision to make.

How it works. 做主 *zuòzhǔ* means having the **authority** to decide, being in charge. 由 marks the person who holds that authority, and the matter decided is the topic in front.

决定	做主
to decide (any decision): 我决定明天走	to have the right to decide

Watch out

- Not 被: *wrong:* 被你做主 → 由你做主.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 岂不是 (wouldn't that be …?)

1. Complete: "Wouldn't that be even more trouble?" 这样 …… 更麻烦?

2. Which is the casual spoken equivalent of 岂不是白花钱了?

- A. 白花钱是不是?
- B. 岂白花钱?
- C. 那不就白花钱了吗?
- D. 花钱白了吗?

3. Build: "If we go now, won't we be late?"

Put in order: 现在去的话 / 岂不是 / ， / 要迟到?

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

4. True or false? 岂不是 asks for information the speaker doesn't have. If false, correct it.

5. Your friend bought a gym membership but never goes. Use 岂不是. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 莫非 (could it be that ...?)

6. Complete: "Could it be that he's ill?" …… 他生病了?

7. Which is the everyday spoken equivalent of 莫非今天放假?

- A. 今天放假吗不成?
- B. 是不是今天放假?
- C. 放假今天莫非?
- D. 今天莫非放假了。

8. Build: "Could something have happened?"

Put in order: 莫非 / 什么事? / 出了

9. True or false? 莫非 states a fact. If false, correct it.

10. The office is dark at nine in the morning and nobody is answering the phone. Use 莫非. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 非 (要) ... 不可 (simply must / insist on)

11. Complete: "This problem absolutely must be solved." 这个问题非解决 ……。

12. Which order is correct?

- A. 他非要去不可。
- B. 他不可非要去。
- C. 他要去非不可。
- D. 他非不可要去。

13. Build: "She insisted on paying."

Put in order: 请客 / 非要 / 她 / 不可。

14. True or false? 非 … 不可 is more emphatic than 必须. If false, correct it.

15. Your little brother wants to go to the amusement park in the rain and won't take no for an answer. Use 非. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 非得 ... 不可 (absolutely must)

16. Complete: "Do you really have to go today?" 你 …… 今天去吗?

17. How is 得 read in 非得?

- A. dé
- B. dì
- C. děi
- D. de

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

18. Build: “This report must be handed in today.”

Put in order: 今天交 / 不可。/ 非得 / 这份报告

19. True or false? 非去不可 and 非得去 are both emphatic. If false, correct it.

20. Your friend has had a fever for three days but refuses to see a doctor. Use 非得 … 不可. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 与其 A，宁可 / 宁愿 B (rather than ... would rather)

21. Complete: “Rather than complain, better find a solution.” 与其抱怨，…… 想办法。

22. In 与其在家等，我宁愿出去找, which option does the speaker reject?

- A. both
- B. neither
- C. waiting at home
- D. going out to look

23. Build: “Rather than wait in the car, I’d rather walk.”

Put in order: 我宁可 / 走路去。/ 与其在车里等 / ，

24. True or false? In 宁可 A，也不 B, B is the rejected option. If false, correct it.

25. The traffic is completely stuck, and your office is only two kilometres away. Use 与其 A，宁可 / 宁愿 B. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 莫过于 (nothing is more ... than)

26. Complete: “Nothing is more important than health.” 最重要的 …… 健康。

27. Which is the plainer spoken equivalent?

- A. 最重要的是健康。
- B. 健康莫过于重要。
- C. 重要莫过于最健康。
- D. 最健康莫过于。

28. Build: “The best method is plenty of practice.”

Put in order: 莫过于 / 多练习。/ 最好的方法

29. True or false? 莫过于 is followed by what best shows the quality. If false, correct it.

30. Asked about the happiest moment of the week, your grandmother smiles. Use 莫过于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 跟 ... 似的 (just like / as if)

31. Complete: “He was as happy as a child.” 他高兴得跟孩子 ……。

32. How is 似 read in 似的?

- A. shí

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- B. sī
- C. sì
- D. shì

33. Build: "It's as if he knows everything."

Put in order: 什么都知道 / 似的。/ 他好像

34. True or false? 像 … 一样 is more neutral than 跟 … 似的. If false, correct it.

35. You come in from a winter walk and your hands are freezing. Use 跟 … 似的. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 8. 不愧是 (truly worthy of)

36. Praise: "You really are a master chef!" 你 …… 是大厨!

37. Is 不愧 used for criticism?

- A. No, it is praise
- B. Only in questions
- C. Yes, often
- D. Only about places

38. Build: "As expected he won; he truly is the champion."

Put in order: ， / 冠军。/ 不愧是 / 他果然赢了

39. True or false? 不愧是畅销书 means the book deserves to be a bestseller. If false, correct it.

40. The national champion wins again, easily, in front of a huge crowd. Use 不愧是. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 9. 一来 … ，二来 … (firstly …, secondly …)

41. Complete: "Firstly it's cheap, secondly it's close to home." 一来便宜，…… 离家近。

42. For steps in a recipe, which is better?

- A. 首先洗菜，然后切菜。
- B. 一方面洗菜，一方面切菜。
- C. 一来洗菜，二来切菜。
- D. 二来洗菜，一来切菜。

43. Build: "I take the subway: firstly it's fast, secondly there are no jams."

Put in order: ，一来快 / 不堵车。/ 我坐地铁 / ，二来

44. True or false? 一来 … 二来 … lists reasons for one decision. If false, correct it.

45. A friend asks why you chose to live near your office. Use 一来 … ，二来 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 10. 由此 (from this / hence)

46. Complete: “From this we can see that…” …… 可见 ……

47. Where does 由此 usually come?

- A. Only in questions
- B. At the very start of a text
- C. After the evidence it refers to
- D. After 吗

48. Build: “Many problems arose from this.”

Put in order: 由此 / 很多 / 问题。/ 产生了

49. True or false? 由此 is more written than 所以. If false, correct it.

50. A researcher presents a survey on how much students sleep. Use 由此. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 11. 兼 (doubling as / concurrently)

51. Complete: “He is the driver and also the guide.” 他是司机 …… 导游。

52. Which is wrong?

- A. 这间屋子是客厅兼书房。
- B. 她做兼职。
- C. 他是老师兼翻译。
- D. 这件衣服便宜兼好看。

53. Build: “She does a part-time job at a café.”

Put in order: 她 / 兼职。/ 在咖啡馆 / 做

54. True or false? 兼 joins roles held at the same time. If false, correct it.

55. In a small start-up, one person often has several roles. Use 兼. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 12. 由 … 做主 (for … to decide)

56. Complete: “It’s up to you.” 由你自己 ……。

57. What does 我做不了主 mean?

- A. I decided not to.
- B. I can’t decide quickly.
- C. It’s not my decision to make.
- D. I am the boss.

58. Build: “Big family decisions are made by Grandpa.”

Put in order: 家里的大事 / 爷爷 / 都由 / 做主。

59. True or false? 被你做主 is correct. If false, correct it.

60. Your parents ask what you want to study at university. Use 由 … 做主. Write

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

61. Choose 非 …… 不可 or 与其 …… 宁可: 这件事 …… 今天做完 ……。/ …… 坐车等一个小时，我 …… 走路去。

62. Make a persuasive question with 岂不是: if we don't go, the tickets are wasted.

63. Give two reasons with 一来 …… 二来 ……: it is cheap / it is close.

64. Praise a great teacher with 不愧是.

65. Find and fix the problem. Someone says 这件事非得今天完成不可. A classmate thinks 不可 forbids finishing it today. Correct it.

66. Use it yourself. Say that rather than use a fast but unreliable method, you would rather use a slow, accurate one.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 岂不是 (wouldn't that be ...?)

1. 岂不是

岂不是 + consequence.

2. C. 那不就白花钱了吗?

那不就 … 了吗? is the spoken form.

3. 现在去的话，岂不是要迟到?

Condition, 岂不是 + consequence.

4. False.

False. 岂不是 is rhetorical: it asks "wouldn't that be …?" to make a point the speaker already believes, as in 这样岂不是更好?

5. Model answer: 你不去的话，岂不是白花钱了?

Check your answer:

- 岂不是 does not ask for information; the speaker is sure of the answer.
- It is a bit literary; in casual speech, 那不就 … 了吗? ("Wouldn't that mean ...?") is common: 那不就白花钱了吗? – "Wouldn't that be a waste of money?"

■ 2. 莫非 (could it be that ...?)

6. 莫非

莫非 + guess.

7. B. 是不是今天放假?

是不是 …? is the spoken form.

8. 莫非出了什么事?

莫非 + guess.

9. False.

It introduces an uncertain guess.

10. Model answer: 莫非今天放假?

Check your answer:

- 莫非 marks an uncertain guess; it does not state a fact.
- It is literary; in speech, 难道 or 是不是 is more common: 是不是今天放假? – "Is today a holiday?"

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 非 (要) … 不可 (simply must / insist on)

11. 不可

非 … 不可.

12. A. 他非要去不可。

The frame is 非 + (要) + verb + 不可, meaning "must, insist on": 他非要去不可. 非 comes before the verb phrase and 不可 closes the sentence.

13. 她非要请客不可。

非要 + verb + 不可.

14. True.

It stresses there is no other way.

15. Model answer: 下这么大的雨，他非要去不可。

Check your answer:

- In careful style, keep 不可 (or 不行 / 不成) at the end: 非去不可. In speech 不可 is sometimes dropped: 他非要去.
- 非 + verb, then 不可: not 非不可去.

■ 4. 非得 … 不可 (absolutely must)

16. 非得

非得 = must (spoken).

17. C. děi

In 非得 ("must, have to"), 得 is read děi, as in 你得去. It is not the structural particle de or dé "obtain".

18. 这份报告非得今天交不可。

非得 + verb + 不可.

19. True.

Both mean "absolutely must go".

20. Model answer: 你烧得这么厉害，非得去医院不可。

Check your answer:

- 得 here is děi ("must"), not de.
- 非得 is spoken; in writing, 必须 is the neutral choice.

■ 5. 与其 A，宁可 / 宁愿 B (rather than … would rather)

21. 不如

与其 A，不如 B.

22. C. waiting at home

The 与其 option is rejected.

23. 与其在车里等，我宁可走路去。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

与其 A，宁可 B.

24. True.

The order is reversed compared with 与其.

25. Model answer: 与其在车里等，我宁可走路去。

Check your answer:

- The option after 与其 is the one rejected; the one after 宁可 / 不如 is chosen.
- 宁 in 宁可 / 宁愿 is read nìng.

■ 6. 莫过于 (nothing is more ... than)

26. 莫过于

最 … 的莫过于 X.

27. A. 最重要的是健康。

最 … 的是 … ("the most … is …") is the plain spoken form: 最重要的是健康. 莫过于 is a written way to say "nothing is more … than", as in 最重要的莫过于健康.

28. 最好的方法莫过于多练习。

最 … 的 + 莫过于 + X.

29. True.

True. 莫过于 means "nothing exceeds" and is followed by what best shows the quality: 最大的快乐莫过于助人.

30. Model answer: 最开心的莫过于周末全家一起吃饭。

Check your answer:

- X after 莫过于 is the best example of the quality, usually just one.
- It is formal; in speech say 最 … 的是 ….

■ 7. 跟 ... 似的 (just like / as if)

31. 似的

跟 X 似的 = like X.

32. D. shì

In 似的 ("as if, like"), 似 is read shì: 像 … 似的 xiàng … shìde. In other words such as 似乎 and 相似 it is read sì.

33. 他好像什么都知道似的。

好像 + clause + 似的.

34. True.

跟 … 似的 is spoken and vivid.

35. Model answer: 我的手冷得跟冰似的。

Check your answer:

- 似的 is read shì de, not sì de.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- It is spoken and vivid; in writing, 像 … 一样 or 仿佛 are common.

■ 8. 不愧是 (truly worthy of)

36. 不愧

不愧是 + identity.

37. A. No, it is praise

不愧 praises someone for living up to a name.

38. 他果然赢了，不愧是冠军。

果然 + result, 不愧是 + title.

39. True.

It lives up to the title.

40. Model answer: 不愧是冠军，他跑得太快了!

Check your answer:

- 不愧 is positive; for "doesn't deserve", say 配不上 or 名不副实.
- Give the reason: 不愧是冠军 alone sounds unfinished without the achievement.

■ 9. 一来 … ，二来 … (firstly …, secondly …)

41. 二来

一来 …，二来 ….

42. A. 首先洗菜，然后切菜。

Steps take 首先 … 然后 …; 一来 … 二来 … gives reasons.

43. 我坐地铁，一来快，二来不堵车。

Decision, then 一来 … 二来 ….

44. True.

True. 一来 … 二来 … lists two reasons for one decision or situation: 一来天太晚，二来我很累，所以不去了.

45. Model answer: 一来上班方便，二来房租也不贵。

Check your answer:

- 一来 … 二来 … gives reasons; for steps in a sequence, use 首先 … 然后 … or 第一 … 第二 ….
- Keep the two reasons parallel and short.

■ 10. 由此 (from this / hence)

46. 由此

由此可见 = it can be seen from this.

47. C. After the evidence it refers to

由此 refers back to what was just said.

48. 由此产生了很多问题。

由此 + verb + result.

49. True.

True. 由此 ("from this, hence") belongs to analytical and written style: 由此可见 "from this we can see". In speech 所以 is normal.

50. Model answer: 大多数学生每天睡不到七个小时，由此可见，学习压力很大。

Check your answer:

- 由此 points back to evidence or an event, so it usually comes after it.
- It is written and analytical; in speech, 所以 / 看来 do the job.

■ 11. 兼 (doubling as / concurrently)

51. 兼

A 兼 B for two roles of one person.

52. D. 这件衣服便宜兼好看。

Qualities take 又 … 又 …, not 兼.

53. 她在咖啡馆做兼职。

兼职 = part-time job.

54. True.

True. 兼 links two roles or functions held at the same time: 经理兼技术员 "manager and also technician", both held by one person.

55. Model answer: 他是我们公司的经理兼技术员。

Check your answer:

- 兼 is for roles held at the same time by one person or thing; two different people take 和.
- It joins nouns of roles or functions: 经理兼技术员, not 很好兼很便宜 (use 又 … 又 …).

■ 12. 由 ... 做主 (for ... to decide)

56. 做主

由 + person + 做主.

57. C. It's not my decision to make.

做不了主 = lack the authority.

58. 家里的大事都由爷爷做主。

Matter + 由 + person + 做主.

59. False.

False. 由 marks who is responsible for a decision: 由你做主 "It's up to you." 被 marks the passive and does not fit here.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

60. Model answer: 这是你的人生，由你自己做主。

Check your answer:

- 由 + person comes before 做主; the matter decided is the topic in front: 这件事由你做主 – "It's up to you to decide this matter."
- Do not use 被: 被你做主 is wrong.

■ Mixed practice

61. 这件事非今天做完不可 (must)。与其坐车等一个小时，我宁可走路去 (rather than A, I would rather B).

62. 我们不去的话，岂不是浪费了票？岂不是 expects the listener to agree.

63. 我选这家饭馆，一来便宜，二来离学校近。

64. 她讲得这么清楚，不愧是好老师。不愧是 = truly lives up to the name.

65. 非 …… 不可 is a double negative that means "must": it has to be finished today.

66. Model answer. 与其用快但不可靠的方法，我宁愿用慢一点但准确的方法。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence with 岂不是 and one with 一来 …… 二来 ……

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Verbs

HSK 6

Two verbs. 谅 is a literary "I bet, I'm sure": 谅他也不敢来 shows the speaker's confident guess, not a fact. 恢复 means to get back to a normal state (恢复健康), while 还原 means to restore something to exactly how it was (还原现场).

At a glance

- **1.** 谅 – I bet / I'll wager …: 谅他也不敢。
- **2.** 恢复 vs 还原 – recover vs restore to original: 爷爷的身体慢慢恢复了。

1. 谅 (I bet / I'll wager …)

Form: 谅 (*liàng*) + person + (也) + 不 / 没 … (I bet)

- **谅他也不敢。** *Liàng tā yě bù gǎn.* – I bet he wouldn't dare.
- **天这么晚了，谅他不会来了。** – It's this late; I'm sure he won't come now.
- **谅他一个人也搬不动。** – I'll wager he can't move it on his own.

How it works. 谅 expresses a confident, often dismissive prediction, mostly about what someone **can't or won't** do. It is literary and old-fashioned; modern speech uses 我看, 我猜 or 肯定 (我看他不敢).

谅他不敢	请原谅我	互相谅解
I bet (prediction)	forgive	understand, make allowances

Watch out

- Don't confuse the prediction 谅 with the verbs 原谅 and 谅解.



2. 恢复 vs 还原 (recover vs restore to original)

Form: 恢复 + normal state · 把 + thing + 还原 (成 …)

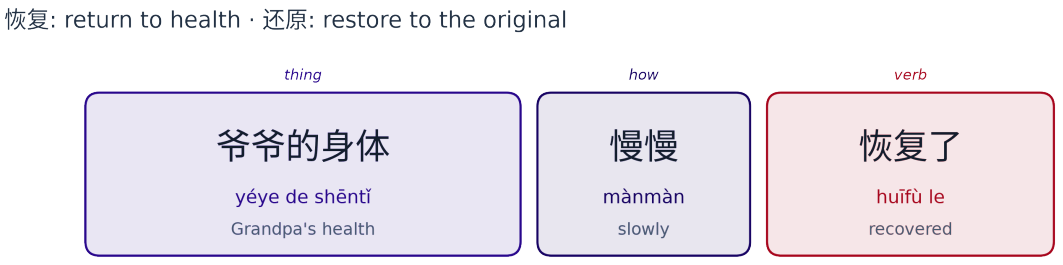
- **爷爷的身体慢慢恢复了。** *Yéye de shēntǐ mànmàn huīfù le.* – Grandpa's health has slowly recovered.
- **地铁已经恢复运行。** – The subway is running again.
- **他们把老照片还原成了彩色的样子。** – They restored the old photo to its colour version.
- **这部电影还原了历史真相。** – The film recreates what really happened.

How it works. 恢复 *huīfù* is a return to a **normal state**: health, order, traffic, business or a relationship. 还原 *huányuán* means getting back the **original form or version** of something: a scene, a picture, a story.

恢复	还原
恢复健康 · 恢复正常 · 恢复营业	还原现场 · 还原历史 · 还原老城区的样子

Watch out

- *wrong:* 还原健康 → 恢复健康.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 谅 (I bet / I'll wager …)

1. Complete: "I bet he wouldn't dare." …… 他也不敢。

2. Which is the modern spoken equivalent of 谅他不敢?

- A. 他谅不敢。
- B. 谅解他不敢。
- C. 原谅他不敢。
- D. 我看他不敢。

3. Build: "It's so late; I'm sure he won't come."

Put in order: 谅他 / ， / 天这么晚了 / 不会来了。

4. True or false? In 请原谅我, 谅 means “I bet”. If false, correct it.

5. Your friend boasts he’ll jump into the freezing lake. You doubt it. Use 谅. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 恢复 vs 还原 (recover vs restore to original)

6. Complete: “He has recovered his health.” 他已经 …… 健康了。

7. “The police reconstructed the accident scene.” Which fits? 警察 _____ 了事故现场。

- A. 恢复
- B. 回复
- C. 还原
- D. 复习

8. Build: “The shop resumes business next week.”

Put in order: 商店 / 营业。/ 下周 / 恢复

9. True or false? 还原健康 is the usual phrase for recovering health. If false, correct it.

10. After a week in hospital, your grandfather is walking again; meanwhile, technicians restore an old photo. Use 恢复 or 还原. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Choose 恢复 or 还原: 他的身体已经 …… 了。/ 警察 …… 了事故的经过。

12. Find and fix the problem. A story says 谅他也不敢来. A classmate treats it as a fact that he did not come. Correct it.

13. Use it yourself. Report the same idea in a neutral way, making clear whose opinion it is.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 谅 (I bet / I'll wager …)

1. 谅

谅 + person + 不 / 也 ….

2. D. 我看他不敢。

我看 … is the everyday guess.

3. 天这么晚了，谅他不会来了。

Situation, then 谅 + person + negative.

4. False.

False. In 原谅谅 is part of the verb "forgive". The sense "I expect, surely" appears only in written patterns like 谅他不敢.

5. Model answer: 谅他也不敢。

Check your answer:

- 谅 usually predicts what someone can't or won't do; positive uses are rare.
- In modern speech, 我看 / 我猜 / 肯定 are more natural: 我看他不敢 – "I don't think he dares."

■ 2. 恢复 vs 还原 (recover vs restore to original)

6. 恢复

Health returns to normal = 恢复.

7. C. 还原

Reconstructing a scene as it originally was = 还原.

8. 商店下周恢复营业。

恢复营业 = resume business.

9. False.

The usual phrase is 恢复健康.

10. Model answer: 爷爷的身体慢慢恢复了。他们把老照片还原成了彩色的样子。

Check your answer:

- Health, order, activity → 恢复: 恢复健康, not 还原健康.
- A scene, picture or story back to its original → 还原: 还原历史真相 – "Reconstruct the truth about history."

■ Mixed practice

11. 他的身体已经恢复了 (back to health)。警察还原了事故的经过 (reconstructed exactly).

12. 谅 is the speaker's confident guess: "I bet he won't dare to come." It is an opinion, not a fact.

13. Model answer. 说话的人认为他不敢来。

Review later. Tomorrow, use 恢复 and 还原 in one sentence each.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Verb phrases

HSK 6

不屑 (于) + verb means you think something is not worth doing because it is beneath you: 他不屑于跟别人争论. It shows contempt, so it describes an attitude, not an inability.

不屑 (于) (disdain to)

Form: subject + 不屑 (于) + verb · 对 …… 不屑一顾 · 不屑的 + noun

- **他不屑于做这种简单的菜。** *Tā búxiè yú zuò zhè zhǒng jiǎndān de cài.* – He thinks cooking such simple dishes is beneath him.
- **他对别人的建议不屑一顾。** *Tā duì biéren de jiànyì búxiè yí gù.* – He dismisses other people's suggestions without a glance.
- **她露出不屑的表情。** *Tā lùchū búxiè de biǎoqíng.* – She gave a look of disdain.
- **他不屑回答这种无聊的问题。** *Tā búxiè huídá zhè zhǒng wúliáo de wèntí.* – He won't stoop to answering such a silly question.
- **真正有本事的人，往往不屑于炫耀。** *Zhēnzhèng yǒu běnshi de rén, wǎngwǎng búxiè yú xuànyào.* – Truly capable people tend to think showing off is beneath them.
- **对于网上的谣言，他只是不屑地笑了笑。** *Duìyú wǎng shang de yáoyán, tā zhǐshì búxiè de xiàole xiào.* – He just gave a scornful smile at the online rumours.

How it works. 不屑 *búxiè* expresses contempt: someone **won't** do something because they think it is not worth doing, beneath them, or too low for them. It goes before a verb (不屑回答, 不屑于做), and 于 between them is optional and a little more formal.

It also works as a description: 不屑的表情 / 眼神 (a disdainful look), 不屑地笑 (smile scornfully). The idiom 不屑一顾 *búxiè yí gù* "not worth a glance" takes its target with 对: 对 …… 不屑一顾. Note the attitude: 不屑 is about the person's pride or values, not about ability or permission.

不会回答	不愿意回答	不屑回答
can't answer (no ability)	unwilling (neutral)	won't, out of contempt
这个问题太难， 他不会回答。	他累了，不愿意回答。	问题太无聊， 他不屑回答。

Watch out

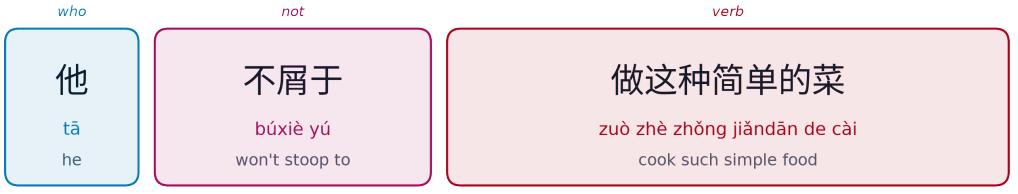
- 不屑 is followed by a verb, not a noun: *wrong:* 他不屑这个工作 → 他不屑做这个工作 (or 他看不起这个工作).
- Do not use it for a simple dislike of food or weather: *wrong:* 我不屑吃辣的 → 我不爱吃辣的.
- 屑 is *xiè*; do not confuse it with 屡 *lǚ* "repeatedly".

In a passage

刚进公司的时候，小陈觉得复印、整理文件这些工作太简单，很不屑去做。经理看出了他的态度，对他说：“ 小事都做不好的人，怎么能做大事？ ” 从那以后，小陈不再对小事不屑一顾，一年后他成了部门最可靠的员工。

Read and notice. What did 小陈 look down on at first? Which sentence shows his attitude changed?

不屑于: think it beneath one



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “He disdains to answer such questions.” 他 …… 回答这种问题。

2. What does 他不屑回答 suggest?

- A. He is shy.
- B. He thinks the question isn’t worth answering.
- C. He doesn’t know the answer.
- D. He answered repeatedly.

3. Build: “He thought others’ advice not worth a glance.”

Put in order: 不屑 / 一顾。/ 他对别人的建议

4. True or false? 不愿意 always implies contempt. If false, correct it.

5. A famous chef is asked whether he would ever cook instant noodles on TV. Use 不屑. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Which sentence uses 不屑 correctly?

- A. 他不屑于和别人争论这种小事。
- B. 他不屑于游泳，因为他不会。

7. Say: “She didn’t even bother to answer such a rude question.” (use 不屑)

8. Find and fix the problem. A classmate reads 他不屑于争辩 as "he cannot argue". What does 不屑于 add?

9. Use it yourself. Write a purpose sentence with 以便 and an attitude sentence with 不屑于.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 不屑

不屑 + verb = think it beneath one.

2. B. He thinks the question isn't worth answering.

不屑 = contempt, not inability.

3. 他对别人的建议不屑一顾。

对 + thing + 不屑一顾.

4. False.

不愿意 is neutral; 不屑 implies contempt.

5. Model answer: 他不屑于做这种简单的菜。

Check your answer:

- 不屑 means "won't, because it's beneath me", not "can't": 他不屑回答 ≠ 他不会回答 – "He doesn't know how to answer."
- The character is 屑 (xiè), not 屡 (lǚ, "repeatedly").

■ Mixed practice

6. A. 不屑 means it is beneath him, not that he cannot do it.

7. 对这么没礼貌的问题，她不屑回答。

8. 不屑于 means he thinks arguing is beneath him, so he will not do it. It shows his attitude, not his ability.

9. Model answer. 请把资料发给大家，以便提前准备。他不屑于回答这种问题。

Review later. Tomorrow, describe someone's attitude with 不屑于.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

"If" statements

HSK 6

假使 …… 就 …… is a formal "if, supposing", mostly found in writing. It sets up an imagined situation: 假使明天停课，我们就在家学习. Nothing in the sentence says it will happen.

假使 ... ，就 ... (if / supposing)

Form: 假使 + condition，(subject) + 就 / 便 / 也 + result

- **假使人能活两百岁，生活会是什么样子？** *Jiǎshǐ rén néng huó liǎngbǎi suì, shēnghuó huì shì shénme yàngzi?* – Supposing people lived to two hundred, what would life be like?
- **假使没有你的帮助，我就不会成功。** *Jiǎshǐ méiyǒu nǐ de bāngzhù, wǒ jiù bú huì chénggōng.* – Without your help, I would not have succeeded.
- **假使明天下雨，比赛便改期。** *Jiǎshǐ míngtiān xià yǔ, bǐsài biàn gǎiqī.* – Should it rain tomorrow, the match will be rescheduled.
- **假使再给我一次机会，我一定会做得更好。** *Jiǎshǐ zài gěi wǒ yí cì jīhuì, wǒ yídìng huì zuò de gèng hǎo.* – If I were given one more chance, I would certainly do better.
- **假使地球上没有水，生命就不可能存在。** *Jiǎshǐ dìqiú shang méiyǒu shuǐ, shēngmìng jiù bù kěnéng cúnzài.* – If there were no water on Earth, life could not exist.
- **假使你遇到困难，也不要轻易放弃。** *Jiǎshǐ nǐ yùdào kùnnan, yě búyào qīngyì fàngqì.* – Even supposing you run into difficulties, don't give up lightly.

How it works. 假使 *jiǎshǐ* is a literary "if, supposing". It is used above all for imagined, unlikely or unreal situations (人能活两百岁, 地球上没有水), which is why it is common in essays, speeches, thought experiments and literature. The result clause takes 就, the more formal 便, or 也 when the result holds "even so"; a question can also follow (生活会是什么样子？).

Like other "if" words, the condition comes first, and 就 / 便 / 也 go after the subject of the result clause. Chinese has a ladder of "if" words from spoken to literary; choose by the register of what you are writing.

Spoken	Neutral	Literary
要是（……的话）	如果	假如 · 假使 · 倘若
要是下雨，我们就不去了。	如果有问题，请联系我。	假使没有水，生命便不能存在。

Watch out

- 就 goes after the subject of the result: *wrong:* 假使下雨，就比赛改期 → 假使下雨，比赛就改期.

- Do not pair it with 所以: *wrong:* 假使你努力，所以你会成功 → 假使你努力，你就会成功.
- In everyday speech 假使 sounds bookish; say 要是 or 如果.

In a passage

> 假使有一天，所有的手机都突然停止工作，我们的生活会变成什么样？人们也许会重新写信，在街上问路，和家人面对面地聊天。假使真是这样，生活便会慢下来，但也可能变得更加真实。

Read and notice. What imagined situation does the writer describe? Find the two results that follow 假使.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “Supposing it rains, the match will be cancelled.” 假使下雨，比赛…… 取消。

2. Which “if” is the most spoken?

- A. 倘若
- B. 假如
- C. 要是
- D. 假使

3. Build: “Had it not been for your help, I wouldn’t have succeeded.”

Put in order: ， / 假使没有你的帮助 / 我就 / 不会成功。

4. True or false? 假使 suits formal essays better than casual chat. If false, correct it.

5. In a philosophy class you imagine an unlikely situation. Use 假使 … ，就 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Choose 假使 or 即使: …… 明天停课，我们就在家学习。/ …… 明天停课，我们也要在家学习。

7. Which register fits 假使?

- A. A written report
- B. A text message to a friend

8. Find and fix the problem. A classmate reads 假使明天停课，我们就在家学习 as “Class is cancelled tomorrow.” Correct it.

9. Use it yourself. Give a back-up plan in case the hall is not available.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 就

假使 …，就 ….

2. C. 要是

要是 is the everyday spoken "if": 要是下雨就不去了. 如果 is neutral, while 假如, 假使 and 倘若 are more written or literary.

3. 假使没有你的帮助，我就不会成功。

假使 + condition, subject + 就 + result.

4. True.

True. 假使 is literary and fits formal essays. In casual chat you would use 要是 or 如果.

5. Model answer: 假使人能活两百岁，生活会是什么样子?

Check your answer:

- In everyday speech, use 如果 / 要是: 要是明天下雨，….
- Put 就 after the subject of the result: 我就不会 …, not 就我不会 ….

■ Mixed practice

6. 假使 …… 就 = supposing (the plan depends on it); 即使 …… 也 = even if (the plan stays the same).

7. A. 假使 is formal; in a message say 要是 or 如果.

8. 假使 imagines a situation: if class were cancelled, we would study at home. It has not been decided.

9. Model answer. 假使礼堂不能用，我们就在教室开会。

Review later. Tomorrow, rewrite one 如果 sentence with 假使.

Cause & effect statements

HSK 6

因为 …… 而 …… joins a cause to a result in formal writing: 他因为准备不足而失败. 而 comes directly before the result verb. It is more compact than 因为 …… 所以 …… and keeps both halves in one clause.

因为 ... 而 ... (because ..., thereby ...)

Form: subject + 因 (为) + cause + 而 + result

- **这个小镇因为一道菜而出名。** *Zhège xiǎozhèn yīnwèi yí dào cài ér chūmíng.* – This little town became famous for one dish.
- **很多人因为这部电影而爱上了中国。** *Hěn duō rén yīnwèi zhè bù diànyǐng ér àishàngle Zhōngguó.* – Many people fell in love with China because of this film.
- **会议因天气而推迟。** *Huìyì yīn tiānqì ér tuīchí.* – The meeting was postponed because of the weather.
- **他因工作太忙而没能参加婚礼。** *Tā yīn gōngzuò tài máng ér méi néng cānjiā hūnlǐ.* – He was unable to attend the wedding because work was too busy.
- **我们不能因为一次失败而放弃。** *Wǒmen bù néng yīnwèi yí cì shībài ér fàngqì.* – We can't give up because of one failure.
- **这座城市因交通方便而吸引了很多企业。** *Zhè zuò chéngshì yīn jiāotōng fāngbiàn ér xīyǐnle hěn duō qǐyè.* – This city has attracted many businesses because of its good transport links.

How it works. 因 (为) A 而 B packs cause and result into **one** formal clause: "B because of A, B as a result of A". The subject comes first, then 因 or 因为 + the cause (a noun phrase or a short clause), then 而 + the result. The result after 而 is a verb phrase or adjective: 出名, 推迟, 放弃, 感动, 改变.

因 alone is more formal than 因为. Negatives and modal words go before 因为, not after 而: 我们**不能**因为一次失败而放弃. Adverbs of degree can stand between 而 and the result: 因 …… 而更加努力. This pattern is typical of news reports, essays and formal notices.

因为下雨，所以比赛取消了。	比赛因下雨而取消。
two clauses; everyday	one tight clause; formal
cause first	subject first, cause in the middle

Watch out

- No 所以 in this pattern: *wrong:* 比赛因为下雨而所以取消 → 比赛因为下雨而取消.
- The subject goes before 因: *wrong:* 因天气会议而推迟 → 会议因天气而推迟.
- Put 不能 / 没 before 因为: *wrong:* 我们因为一次失败而不能放弃 (this says failure *stops* you giving up) → 我们不能因为一次失败而放弃.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

In a passage

景德镇是江西省的一座小城，却因瓷器而闻名世界。一千多年来，这里的人们因热爱这门手艺而代代相传。近年来，很多年轻艺术家也因这里浓厚的文化氛围而搬来居住，小城因此变得更加热闹。

Read and notice. Find the three 因 …… 而 …… clauses. For each one, say the cause and the result in an everyday 因为 …… 所以 …… sentence.

因为 A 而 B: B because of A



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete (written): “He was absent because of illness.” 他因为生病 …… 缺席。

2. Which is correct?

- A. 会议而因天气推迟。
- B. 会议因天气而推迟。
- C. 因天气会议推迟而。
- D. 会议因天气而所以推迟。

3. Build: “Many people fell in love with China because of this film.”

Put in order: 很多人 / 而 / 因为这部电影 / 爱上了中国。

4. True or false? 因为 … 而 … is more formal than 因为 … 所以 …. If false, correct it.

5. A travel article explains why a small town became well known. Use 因为 … 而 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他因为准备不足而失败了。
- B. 他因为准备不足而所以失败了。
- C. 他而失败了，因为准备不足。

7. Rewrite formally with 因为 …… 而: 因为天气不好，所以比赛推迟了。

8. Find and fix the problem. A classmate thinks any 因为 …… 而 …… sentence must be true. What does the pattern really do?

9. Use it yourself. Say the team lost because it was not well prepared.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 而

因为 A 而 B.

2. B. 会议因天气而推迟。

因 + cause + 而 + result, no 所以.

3. 很多人因为这部电影而爱上了中国。

Subject + 因为 A + 而 + B.

4. True.

It packs cause and result into one clause.

5. Model answer: 这个小镇因为一道菜而出名。

Check your answer:

- Do not add 所以: 因为下雨而取消, not 因为下雨而所以取消.
- 而 is followed directly by the result (adverbs such as 更 may come first); no 所以.

■ Mixed practice

6. A. 而 introduces the result (他因为准备不足而失败了); don't add 所以 as well.

7. 比赛因为天气不好而推迟了。

8. It links a cause and a result in formal style. It shows the writer's claim about the cause; you still need evidence that the cause is right.

9. Model answer. 这个队因为准备不足而输了比赛。

Review later. Tomorrow, rewrite one 因为 …… 所以 …… sentence with 因为 …… 而 …….

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Sentence patterns – formal & written

HSK 6

Formal patterns for reports and official writing. 借 …… 之名 and 以 …… 的名义 both mean “in the name of”, but 借 …… 之名 suggests a false excuse; 通过 …… 使 …… shows how a result was achieved; 势必 says a result is bound to follow; 倘若 is a literary “if”; and 所 + verb + 的 turns a verb into “that which …”.

At a glance

- **1.** 以 … 的名义 – in the name of: 我以全班同学的名义，向老师表示感谢。
- **2.** 借 … 之名 – under the guise of: 有人借慈善之名骗钱。
- **3.** 通过 … 使 … – by …, bring about …: 医院通过新流程，使患者的等待时间缩短了一半。
- **4.** 势必 – be bound to / inevitably: 这样下去，势必会出大问题。
- **5.** 倘若 – if / should – literary: 倘若货物延迟送达，买方有权取消订单。
- **6.** 所 + Verb + 的 – that which is V-ed: 您所提出的问题，我们会认真考虑。

1. 以 … 的名义 (in the name of)

Form: 以 + person / organisation + 的名义 + action

- **我以全班同学的名义，向老师表示感谢。** *Wǒ yǐ quán bān tóngxué de míngyì …* – On behalf of the whole class, I’d like to thank our teacher.
- **这封信是以学校的名义发出的。** – This letter was sent in the school’s name.
- **我以朋友的名义劝你，别这么做。** – As your friend, I’m telling you: don’t do it.

How it works. 以 …… 的名义 *yǐ … de míngyì* “in the name of” says whose name or authority an action carries. It is neutral and official, and goes before the verb phrase. The shorter 以公司名义 also occurs in documents.

代表全班	以全班的名义	借 …… 之名
represent the class	in the class’s name	as a cover (critical)



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. 借 … 之名 (under the guise of)

Form: (subject) + 借 + cover reason + 之名 + real (bad) purpose

- **有人借慈善之名骗钱。** *Yǒu rén jiè císhàn zhī míng piàn qián.* – Some people swindle money under the guise of charity.
- **一些商家借环保之名提高价格。** – Some businesses raise prices in the name of being green.

How it works. 借 …… 之名 *jiè … zhī míng* "borrowing the name of …" says the stated reason is only a **cover**, and the real purpose follows. It is formal and critical, common in news and commentary.

以公司的名义	借公司之名
on behalf of the company (neutral, official)	using the company as a cover (critical)

Watch out

- It accuses someone of a hidden motive: use it only when you mean to criticise.



3. 通过 … 使 … (by …, bring about …)

Form: subject + 通过 + means + 使 + someone / something + result · 通过 + means, subject + result

- **医院通过新流程，使患者的等待时间缩短了一半。** *Yīyuàn tōngguò xīn liúchéng, shǐ …* – The hospital halved patients' waiting time with a new procedure.
- **公司通过培训使员工提高了能力。** – The company improved its staff's skills through training.
- **通过培训，员工的能力提高了。** – Through training, the staff's skills improved.

How it works. 通过 gives the means and 使 the result, and the sentence needs a subject who does it (医院, 公司).

The classic 病句. *wrong:* 通过这次活动，使学生更自信了 has no subject, because 通过 and 使 both swallow it. There are two repairs:

Add a subject	Drop 使
学校通过这次活动，使学生更自信了	通过这次活动，学生更自信了

Watch out

- The same trap catches 经过 / 由于 …… 使 ……: *wrong:* 经过大家的努力，使问题得到了解决 → 经过大家的努力，问题得到了解决.



4. 势必 (be bound to / inevitably)

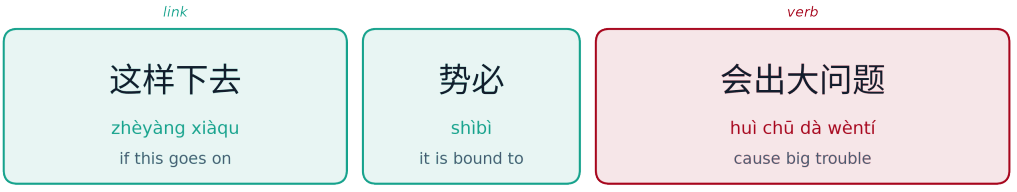
Form: (cause / situation，) + 势必 + (会) + result

- **这样下去，势必会出大问题。** *Zhèyàng xiàqù, shìbì huì chū dà wèntí.* – If this goes on, serious trouble is bound to follow.
- **长期熬夜势必损害健康。** – Staying up late for long periods is bound to damage your health.
- **价格上涨势必影响销量。** – Rising prices will inevitably affect sales.

How it works. 势必 *shìbì* predicts a result that follows from the **momentum of the situation**: the way things are going, it will happen. It is formal and analytical, and usually follows a stated cause. Speech uses 肯定会 / 一定会.

可能 / 恐怕	势必	必然
maybe (a guess)	bound to (reasoned forecast)	necessarily; also an adjective: 必然的结果

势必: is bound to



5. 倘若 (if / should – literary)

Form: 倘若 + condition, (subject) + 就 / 便 / 则 + result

- **倘若货物延迟送达，买方有权取消订单。** *Tǎngruò huòwù yánchí sòngdá …* – Should the goods arrive late, the buyer may cancel the order.
- **倘若当时我听了你的话，就不会这样了。** – If I'd listened to you then, it wouldn't have come to this.

How it works. 倘若 *tǎngruò* "if, should" is a literary 如果, used in contracts, essays and literature, and for regrets about the past.

Word	Use
要是 / 如果	everyday "if"
假如 / 假使 / 倘若	literary "if, supposing"
万一	in case (unlikely and unwelcome)

Watch out

- 就 / 便 go after the result's subject: *wrong:* 就我不会 → 我就不会.
- In conversation, 倘若 sounds bookish.

倘若 …: if (formal, contracts)



6. 所 + Verb + 的 (that which is V-ed)

Form: (subject) + 所 + transitive verb + 的 (+ noun)

- **您所提出的问题，我们会认真考虑。** *Nín suǒ tíchū de wèntí …* – We will carefully consider the issues you have raised.
- **我们所做的一切都是为了孩子。** – Everything we do is for the children.
- **正如大家所看到的，情况已经好转。** – As you can all see, things have improved.

How it works. 所 *suǒ* before a verb marks what the verb acts on: 他所说的话 "the words he said". It adds a formal, precise tone; the meaning is the same without it (他说的话). Set phrases keep it: 众所周知 "as everyone knows".

Watch out

- 所 goes right before the verb, after the subject: *wrong:* 所他说的 → 他所说的.
- It needs a verb that takes an object (所说, 所做, 所看到); verbs without an object don't work (*wrong:* 所去, *wrong:* 所来).



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 以 … 的名义 (in the name of)

1. Complete: "He donated in his own name." 他以个人的 …… 捐了钱。

2. Which suggests the name is used as a cover?

- A. 以个人的名义捐款。
- B. 以公司的名义发信。
- C. 代表公司发言。
- D. 借公司之名谋私利。

3. Build: "On behalf of the whole class, I thank the teacher."

Put in order: ， / 向老师 / 我以全班同学的名义 / 表示感谢。

4. True or false? 代表 can also mean "on behalf of". If false, correct it.

5. Your class wants to thank the teacher who is retiring, and you write the card. Use 以 … 的名义. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 借 … 之名 (under the guise of)

6. Complete: "under the guise of charity" 借慈善之 ……

7. Which is neutral, without criticism?

- A. 他借出差之名去旅游。
- B. 他以公司的名义发言。
- C. 他借环保之名涨价。
- D. 他借公司之名谋私利。

8. Build: "Some businesses raise prices under the banner of environmental protection."
Put in order: 一些商家 / 提高 / 借环保之名 / 价格。

9. True or false? 借 … 之名 implies the stated reason is a cover. If false, correct it.

10. A news report warns about fake charity callers. Use 借 … 之名. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 通过 … 使 … (by …, bring about …)

11. Which sentence is grammatically correct?

- A. 使通过这次讲座，大家了解了环保。
- B. 通过这次讲座，使了解了大家环保的重要性。
- C. 这次讲座使大家了解了环保的重要性。
- D. 通过这次讲座，使大家了解了环保的重要性。

12. Repair the error: 通过新流程，使等待时间缩短了。

- A. 通过新流程，使等待时间缩短了吗?
- B. 医院通过新流程，使等待时间缩短了。
- C. 新流程通过，使等待时间缩短了。
- D. 通过新流程，使医院等待时间缩短了。

13. Build the correct sentence: "Through training, the staff's skills improved."
Put in order: 提高了。/ ，/ 员工的能力 / 通过培训

14. True or false? 经过大家的努力，使问题得到了解决 is correct. If false, correct it.

15. Which sentence has the missing-subject error?

- A. 在大家的支持下，使这个项目顺利完成了。
- B. 大家的支持使这个项目顺利完成了。
- C. 在大家的支持下，这个项目顺利完成了。

16. Repair: 由于天气的原因，使航班推迟了。

- A. 由于天气的原因，航班推迟了。
- B. 由于天气的原因，使得航班推迟了。

17. True or false? 这次比赛使他更加热爱篮球了。is correct. If false, correct it.

18. A hospital report describes how a new booking system changed patients' waiting

time. Use 通过 … 使 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 势必 (be bound to / inevitably)

19. Complete: "This is bound to affect sales." 这 …… 影响销量。

20. Which sounds most natural in casual speech?

- A. 这样势必地出问题。
- B. 这样肯定会出问题。
- C. 这样势必会出问题。
- D. 这样必然会出问题。

21. Build: "Staying up late long-term is bound to harm your health."

Put in order: 势必 / 长期熬夜 / 健康。/ 损害

22. True or false? 势必 expresses a weak guess. If false, correct it.

23. An economist comments on a factory that keeps cutting corners on safety. Use 势必. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 倘若 (if / should – literary)

24. Complete (contract): "Should the goods arrive late, the buyer may cancel." …… 货物延迟送达，买方可以取消订单。

25. "What if it rains?" (an unlikely, unwelcome event). Which fits? _____ 下雨怎么办?

- A. 因为
- B. 万一
- C. 既然
- D. 倘若

26. Build: "Had I listened to you, it wouldn't have come to this."

Put in order: 就不会 / ， / 倘若当时我听了你的话 / 这样了。

27. True or false? 倘若 sounds natural in casual conversation. If false, correct it.

28. A contract sets out what happens if a delivery is late. Use 倘若. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 所 + Verb + 的 (that which is V-ed)

29. Complete (formal): "the words he said" 他 …… 说的话

30. Which order is correct?

- A. 所我知道的
- B. 我知道所的
- C. 我所知道的
- D. 我的所知道

31. Build: "Everything we do is for the children."

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Put in order: 我们所做的 / 都是为了 / 孩子。/ 一切

32. True or false? 众所周知 means "as everyone knows". If false, correct it.

33. In a formal letter you respond to a complaint point by point. Use 所 + Verb + 的. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

34. Choose 以 …… 的名义 or 借 …… 之名: 他 …… 班级 …… 给老师送了花。/ 有人 …… 慈善 …… 骗钱。

35. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 通过培训，使员工提高了能力。
- B. 通过培训，员工提高了能力。
- C. 培训通过，使员工能力提高。

36. Rewrite with 所 …… 的: 我们学的知识很有用。

37. Find and fix the problem. An editor sees 通过培训，使员工提高了能力. Correct it in two ways.

38. Use it yourself. Say he gave flowers to the teacher on behalf of the class, then say some people cheat under the cover of charity.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 以 … 的名义 (in the name of)

1. 名义

以 X 的名义.

2. D. 借公司之名谋私利。

借公司之名谋私利 uses the company's name as a cover for personal gain, so it is critical. 以 … 的名义 and 代表 are neutral ways to say whom you speak or act for.

3. 我以全班同学的名义，向老师表示感谢。

以 X 的名义 + verb phrase.

4. True.

True. 代表 can mean "on behalf of": 我代表全班感谢老师 "On behalf of the class, I thank the teacher."

5. Model answer: 我以全班同学的名义，向老师表示感谢。

Check your answer:

- 以 … 的名义 is neutral or official; for using a name as a cover, use 借 … 之名.
- Both 以公司的名义 and the shorter 以公司名义 occur. Learn the full phrase first; the shorter form is also used in formal documents.

■ 2. 借 … 之名 (under the guise of)

6. 名

借 X 之名.

7. B. 他以公司的名义发言。

以 … 的名义 ("in the name of") is neutral: 他以公司的名义发言 simply says whom he represents. 借 … 之名 suggests the name is used as a cover for something else.

8. 一些商家借环保之名提高价格。

Subject + 借 X 之名 + real purpose.

9. True.

True. 借 … 之名 is critical: the stated reason is a pretext, as in 借出差之名去旅游 "travel on the pretext of a business trip".

10. Model answer: 有人借慈善之名骗钱。

Check your answer:

- 借 … 之名 implies the stated reason is a cover; use it only when you mean to criticise.
- For a neutral "in the name of / on behalf of", use 以 … 的名义.

■ 3. 通过 ... 使 ... (by ..., bring about ...)

11. C. 这次讲座使大家了解了环保的重要性。

The first has no subject. The second has one: 这次讲座 is the subject of 使.

12. B. 医院通过新流程，使等待时间缩短了。

Add the doer (医院) before 通过.

13. 通过培训，员工的能力提高了。

通过 …，subject + result (no 使).

14. False.

It lacks a subject; drop 使 or add a doer.

15. A. 在大家的支持下，使这个项目顺利完成了。

在 …… 下 is only a frame, so 使 has no subject. Drop 使, or make 大家的支持 the subject.

16. A. 由于天气的原因，航班推迟了。

由于 gives a reason, not a doer; drop 使 so 航班 is the subject. 使得 has the same problem.

17. True.

这次比赛 is the subject of 使 – no 通过 frame, no error.

18. Model answer: 医院通过新流程，使患者的等待时间缩短了一半。

Check your answer:

- Subject + 通过 … 使 …: **公司通过培训使员工提高了能力。** – "Through training, the company improved its staff's skills."
- 通过 …，subject + result: **通过培训，员工的能力提高了。** – "Through training, the staff's skills improved."

■ 4. 势必 (be bound to / inevitably)

19. 势必

势必 + verb.

20. B. 这样肯定会出问题。

肯定会 is the spoken choice.

21. 长期熬夜势必损害健康。

Cause + 势必 + verb.

22. False.

It is a strong, reasoned prediction.

23. Model answer: 这样下去，势必会出大问题。

Check your answer:

- 势必 means the result is practically certain because of the situation; for a guess, use 可能 / 恐怕.

- It is written style; in speech, 肯定会 / 一定会 are more natural.

■ 5. 倘若 (if / should – literary)

24. 倘若

倘若 = if (literary).

25. B. 万一

万一 = in case of something unlikely and unwelcome.

26. 倘若当时我听了你的话，就不会这样了。

倘若 + condition, 就 + result.

27. False.

It is literary; speech uses 如果 / 要是.

28. Model answer: 倘若货物延迟送达，买方有权取消订单。

Check your answer:

- In conversation, 如果 / 要是 are natural; 倘若 sounds bookish.
- Keep 就 / 便 after the subject of the result: 我就 …, not 就我 ….

■ 6. 所 + Verb + 的 (that which is V-ed)

29. 所

Subject + 所 + verb + 的.

30. C. 我所知道的

所 stands before the verb in the pattern subject + 所 + verb + 的: 我所知道的 "what I know". It never comes before the subject or after the verb.

31. 我们所做的一切都是为了孩子。

所 + verb + 的 + noun.

32. True.

True. 众所周知 is a set phrase with 所 meaning "as is well known to all".

33. Model answer: 您所提出的问题，我们会认真考虑。

Check your answer:

- Order: subject + 所 + verb + 的: 他所说的, not 所他说的.
- It needs a transitive verb (one with an object): 所说, 所做, 所看到; not 所去 / 所来.

■ Mixed practice

34. 他以班级的名义给老师送了花 (neutral, on behalf of)。有人借慈善之名骗钱 (using it as a cover).

35. B. In A, 通过 turns 培训 into a phrase, so 使 has no subject. 培训使员工提高了能力 is also correct.

36. 我们所学的知识很有用。所 + verb + 的 is a formal "what we learn".

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

37. The sentence has no subject. Drop 通过: 培训使员工提高了能力. Or drop 使: 通过培训，员工提高了能力.

38. Model answer. 他以班级的名义给老师送了花。有人借慈善之名骗钱。

Review later. Tomorrow, write one sentence with 势必 and one with 所 …… 的.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Let alone...

HSK 6

连 …… 都 ……，何况 …… means "even … , let alone …". The 连 part is the case where you would least expect the result; 何况 adds a case where it is even more obvious: 连专家都不懂，何况我们. In formal writing, A 尚且 ……，何况 B says the same thing.

At a glance

- **1.** 连 … 都 … ，何况 … – even …, let alone …: 这本书连大人都看不懂，何况小孩子呢?
- **2.** 尚且 … 何况 … – even …, let alone – formal: 这架钢琴大人尚且搬不动，何况孩子呢?

1. 连 ... 都 ... ，何况 ... (even ..., let alone ...)

Form: 连 + stronger case + 都 / 也 …，何况 + weaker case (呢)?

- **这本书连大人都看不懂，何况小孩子呢?** *Zhè běn shū lián dàrén dōu kàn bu dǒng, hékuàng xiǎo háizi ne?* – Even adults can't understand this book, let alone a small child.
- **他连最难的题都会做，何况这么简单的?** *Tā lián zuì nán de tí dōu huì zuò, hékuàng zhème jiǎndān de?* – He can do even the hardest questions, let alone such an easy one.
- **这件事连他最好的朋友都不知道，何况我呢?** *Zhè jiàn shì lián tā zuì hǎo de péngyou dōu bù zhīdào, hékuàng wǒ ne?* – Not even his best friend knows about this, so how would I?
- **平时走路都要二十分钟，何况今天下雪呢?** *Píngshí zǒulù dōu yào èrshí fēnzhōng, hékuàng jīntiān xià xuě ne?* – It takes twenty minutes on foot on a normal day, and today it's snowing!
- **太远了，何况天也晚了，我们明天再去吧。** *Tài yuǎn le, hékuàng tiān yě wǎn le, wǒmen míngtiān zài qù ba.* – It's too far, and besides, it's getting late; let's go tomorrow.
- **学好母语都不容易，更不用说外语了。** *Xuéhǎo mǔyǔ dōu bù róngyì, gèng búyòng shuō wàiyǔ le.* – Mastering your mother tongue isn't easy, let alone a foreign language.

How it works. 何况 *hékuàng* draws the obvious conclusion. The first clause makes a claim about a *strong* test case, usually with 连 …… 都 / 也 ("even"): 连大人都看不懂. 何况 then names a case for which the claim is *even more* true: 何况小孩子. With 呢 and a question mark it becomes a rhetorical question: "so what about a child?", meaning "of course a child can't".

The direction is the key: 连 takes the case where you would least expect the claim to

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

hold (adults understanding, the hardest question, his best friend knowing), and 何况 takes the case where it obviously follows. Without 连, 何况 can simply add a further reason: "besides, what's more" (何况天也晚了). 更不用说 …… 了 says the same thing as a plain statement.

……，更不用说 …… 了	……，何况 …… 呢?
a statement: "let alone"	a rhetorical question; more literary
大人都不懂，更不用说孩子了。	大人都不懂，何况孩子呢?

Watch out

- Get the direction right: *wrong:* 这本书连小孩子都看不懂，何况大人呢? (the logic is backwards) → 连大人都看不懂，何况小孩子呢?
- Keep 都 / 也 after the 连 phrase: *wrong:* 连大人看不懂 → 连大人都看不懂.
- 何况 starts the second clause; it does not go after the subject: *wrong:* 小孩子何况呢 → 何况小孩子呢.

In a passage

> 很多人觉得在大城市买房太难了。连工作了十年的白领都买不起，何况刚毕业的年轻人呢？所以越来越多的年轻人选择租房。何况租房还有一个好处：换工作的时候，搬家也比较方便。

Read and notice. Which 何况 draws a "let alone" conclusion, and which one adds a further reason?



2. 尚且 … 何况 … (even …, let alone – formal)

Form: A 尚且 + result，何况 B (呢)? · …，更不用说 B 了

- **这架钢琴大人尚且搬不动，何况孩子呢?** *Zhè jià gāngqín dàrén shàngqiě bān bu dòng, hékuàng háizi ne?* – Even adults can't move this piano, let alone a child.
- **这道题老师尚且要想很久，更不用说学生了。** – Even the teacher needs a long time on this question, not to mention the students.
- **平时尚且这么忙，周末更忙。** – It's this busy even on normal days; at weekends it's busier still.

How it works. 尚且 is the formal partner of 连 … 都. It marks the case where you would least expect the result; 何况 or 更不用说 then adds a case where it is even more obvious.

连大人都搬不动，何况孩子	大人尚且搬不动，何况孩子
everyday style	formal style

Watch out

- *wrong:* 尚且大人 → 大人尚且 (after the subject).
- 尚且 is almost always followed by a second clause with 何况 / 更不用说 / 更.

A 尚且 …，何况 B: even A …, let alone B



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 连 … 都 … ，何况 … (even …, let alone …)

1. Complete: “Even experts don’t know, let alone us.” 连专家都不知道，…… 我们呢?

2. In 太远了，何况天也晚了, what does 何况 mean?

- A. therefore
- B. besides
- C. although
- D. let alone

3. Build: “He can do even the hardest questions, let alone easy ones.”

Put in order: 何况 / 他连最难的题都会做 / ， / 这么简单的?

4. True or false? 更不用说 … 了 is the statement form of the same idea. If false, correct it.

5. Your little cousin wants to read a university textbook. Use 连 … 都 … ，何况 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 尚且 ... 何况 ... (even ..., let alone – formal)

6. Complete: "Even adults can't move it, let alone a child." 大人 …… 搬不动，何况孩子呢?

7. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 大人尚且搬不动，何况孩子呢?
- B. 尚且大人搬不动，何况孩子呢?
- C. 大人搬不动尚且，何况孩子呢?

8. Build: "Even the teacher needs a long time, not to mention the students."

Put in order: 更不用说 / 老师尚且要想很久，/ 了。/ 学生

9. True or false? 大人尚且搬不动 means the same as 连大人都搬不动. If false, correct it.

10. In 专家尚且不懂，何况我们呢? , who is the case you'd least expect not to understand?

- A. 我们 (us)
- B. 专家 (the experts)

11. Write one essay sentence with A 尚且 …, 何况 B. Topic: learning a language well takes time. Use 尚且 … 何况 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

12. Complete: 这道题连老师都不会做，…… 我们呢?

13. Which part goes after 连?

- A. The case where you least expect the result
- B. The most obvious case

14. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 连新手都做不到，何况专家. What is wrong with the logic?

15. Use it yourself. Say that a short text is already hard for you, let alone a long technical report.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 连 ... 都 ... ，何况 ... (even ..., let alone ...)

1. 何况

连 A 都 …，何况 B.

2. B. besides

何况 can add a further reason.

3. 他连最难的题都会做，何况这么简单的?

连 … 都 …，何况 ….

4. True.

何况 … 呢? is often rhetorical.

5. Model answer: 这本书连大人都看不懂，何况小孩子呢?

Check your answer:

- The 连 item is the stronger test; the 何况 item follows more obviously.
- 何况 can also add a reason: "besides": 太远了，何况天也晚了 – "It's too far; besides, it's late."

■ 2. 尚且 ... 何况 ... (even ..., let alone – formal)

6. 尚且

A 尚且 …，何况 B.

7. A. 大人尚且搬不动，何况孩子呢?

尚且 goes right after the subject, before the verb.

8. 老师尚且要想很久，更不用说学生了。

更不用说 … 了 can replace 何况.

9. True.

尚且 is the formal partner of 连 … 都.

10. B. 专家 (the experts)

尚且 marks the least expected case; 何况 adds the case where it's even more obvious.

11. Model answer: 母语尚且要学很多年，何况一门外语呢?

Check your answer:

- 尚且 comes after A and marks the least expected case.
- 何况 (or 更不用说) adds the more obvious case.
- I read it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ Mixed practice

12. 何况. If even the teacher can't do it, we certainly can't.

13. A. 连 + the least likely case; 何况 adds the more obvious one: 连大人都搬不动，何况孩子.

14. 连 takes the easier or more likely case and 何况 the harder one. Experts are more able, so say 连专家都做不到，何况新手.

15. Model answer. 连一篇短文我都看不太懂，何况一份长长的技术报告。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 连 …… 都 ……，何况 …… sentence about a skill.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar adverbs

HSK 6

Seven pairs of adverbs that English often translates the same way. The difference is usually about attitude (反而 vs 却, 居然 vs 反而), time (一度 vs 一时, 一直 vs 一向) or strength (根本 vs 到底, 不得不 vs 只好, 不断 vs 不停). Read the situation in each example before you choose.

At a glance

- **1.** 不得不 vs 只好 – forced to vs only option: 没有车了，我们只好走回去。
- **2.** 不断 vs 不停 – continually vs non-stop: 城市在不断发展。
- **3.** 反而 vs 却 – instead vs however: 我睡了一觉，却还是很累；不但没好，反而更累了。
- **4.** 根本 vs 到底 – at all vs on earth: 你到底去哪儿了?
- **5.** 居然 vs 反而 – surprisingly vs instead: 他居然上台唱了一首歌!
- **6.** 一度 vs 一时 – at one time vs for the moment: 他一度失业，那时他一时不知道该怎么办。
- **7.** 一直 vs 一向 – continuously vs habitually: 她一直在练琴，她一向很努力。

1. 不得不 vs 只好 (forced to vs only option)

Form: subject + 只好 / 不得不 + verb

- **没有车了，我们只好走回去。** *Wǒmen zhǐhǎo zǒu huíqu.* – There's no transport left, so we'll just have to walk back.
- **公司规定要打卡，我不得不早起。** – The company makes us clock in, so I have to get up early.
- **我不得不承认，他说得对。** – I have to admit he's right.

How it works. 只好 *zhǐhǎo* means the **only option left**: other options ran out and you accept it, resigned. 不得不 *bùdébù* means being **forced** by rules, duty, health or pressure; it is a little more formal.

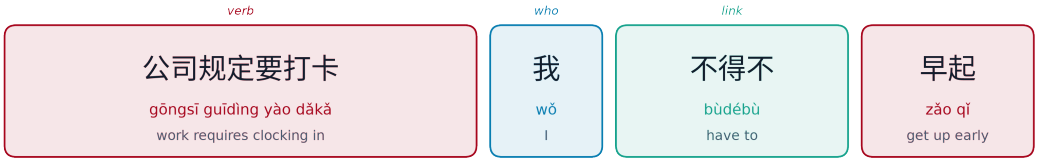
只好	不得不
no other choice remained	something forces you
商店关门了，我只好明天再买	他病了，不得不住院

Often both work (下雨了，我们只好 / 不得不待在家里); 不得不 sounds more forced.

Watch out

- 不得不承认 is a fixed expression: "I have to admit".

只好: resigned to it · 不得不: forced to



2. 不断 vs 不停 (continually vs non-stop)

Form: 不断 + verb (ongoing change) · 不停 (地) + verb / verb + 个不停 (non-stop action)

- **城市在不断发展。** *Chéngshì zài búduàn fāzhǎn.* – The city keeps developing.
- **楼上的狗叫个不停。** – The dog upstairs barks non-stop.
- **雨不停地下。** – The rain won't stop.
- **我们要不断提高自己。** – We must keep improving ourselves.

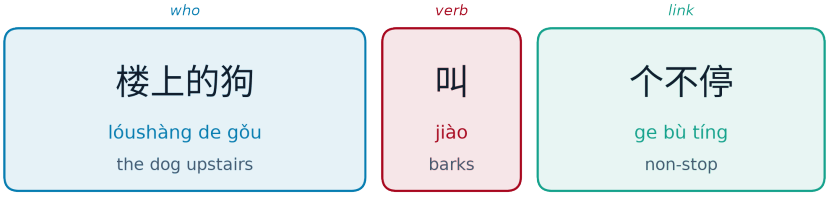
How it works. 不断 *búduàn* "continually" describes progress or change over time (进步, 提高, 变化, 发展), and suits formal contexts. 不停 *bùtíng* "without stopping" describes an action with no pause; it has the special form verb + 个不停.

不断	不停
不断提高 · 不断变化	不停地说 · 哭个不停
also before nouns: 不断的努力	mostly actions

Watch out

- *wrong:* 不停提高 → 不断提高; *wrong:* 说个不断 → 说个不停.

不断: steadily · 个不停: non-stop



3. 反而 vs 却 (instead vs however)

Form: subject + 却 + contrast · subject + 反而 + opposite result

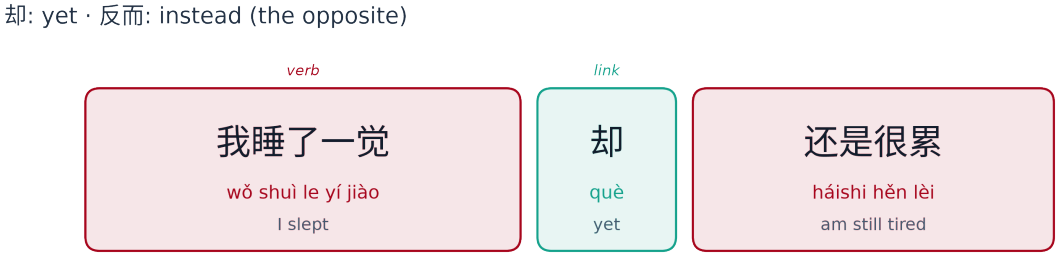
- **我睡了一觉，却还是很累。** *Wǒ shuìle yí jiào, què háishi hěn lèi.* – I took a nap, yet I'm still tired.
- **不但没好，反而更累了。** – Far from feeling better, I'm actually more tired.
- **他很有钱，却不快乐。** – He's rich but not happy.
- **他有钱了，反而不快乐了。** – Once he got rich, he became unhappier.

How it works. 却 *què* marks a plain contrast, "but, yet": the second part doesn't match the first. 反而 *fǎn'ér* marks a reversal: the result went the **opposite** way from what was expected, often after 不但不 / 不但没. Both are adverbs after the subject.

却	反而
contrast	reversal of an expectation

Watch out

- Neither starts the clause: *wrong:* 却他睡不着 → 他却睡不着.



4. 根本 vs 到底 (at all vs on earth)

Form: 根本 + 不 / 没 + verb (not at all) · 到底 + question (on earth) · 到底 + 还是 (after all)

- **你到底去哪儿了？我根本不相信你在图书馆。** *Nǐ dàodǐ qù nǎr le? Wǒ gēnběn bù xiāngxìn …* – Where on earth did you go? I don't believe for a moment you were in the library.
- **他到底还是来了。** – He came after all.
- **根本原因是缺少沟通。** – The root cause is a lack of communication.

How it works. 根本 *gēnběn* strengthens a **negative statement** ("not at all"), and as an adjective means "fundamental, root". 到底 *dàodǐ* strengthens a **question** ("on earth, exactly"); in a statement it means "after all, in the end".

根本	到底
根本不知道 · 根本没去	你到底想怎么样?
根本原因 (root cause)	到底还是来了 (after all)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 你根本去哪儿了 → 你到底去哪儿了; *wrong:* 我到底不知道 → 我根本不知道.



5. 居然 vs 反而 (surprisingly vs instead)

Form: subject + 居然 + surprising fact · subject + 反而 + opposite result

- **他居然上台唱了一首歌!** *Tā jūrán shàng tái chàngle yì shǒu gē!* – He actually went on stage and sang!
- **大家以为他会紧张，他反而很放松。** – Everyone expected him to be nervous, but he was relaxed instead.
- **吃了药，反而更不舒服了。** – After the medicine, I actually felt worse.

How it works. 居然 *jūrán* (like 竟然) marks **any surprise**, good or bad. 反而 says the result went in the **opposite** direction from a clear expectation.

居然 / 竟然	反而
surprising	opposite of the expected result
她居然会说日语	他不但没生气，反而笑了

Both can fit one situation: 他不但没生气，居然还笑了 stresses the surprise; 反而笑了 stresses the reversal.

Watch out

- 反而 needs an expectation to reverse; 居然 doesn't.

居然: surprisingly · 反而: on the contrary



6. 一度 vs 一时 (at one time vs for the moment)

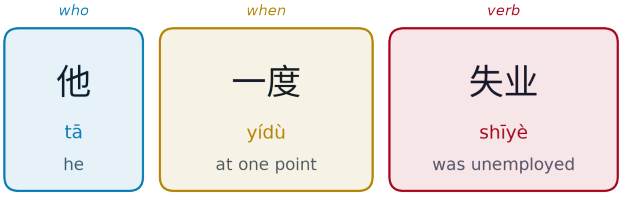
Form: subject + 一度 + verb / adjective (a past phase) · 一时 + verb (a brief moment)

- **他一度失业，那时他一时不知道该怎么办。** *Tā yídù shīyè …, yìshí bù zhīdào …* – He was out of work for a time, and at first he didn't know what to do.
- **这种游戏一度很流行。** – This game was popular at one time.
- **我一时想不起来他的名字。** – I can't recall his name just now.
- **他一时冲动说错了话。** – He said the wrong thing on impulse.

How it works. 一度 *yídù* "at one time" marks a past phase that has since ended. 一时 *yìshí* "for the moment" marks a brief moment, often a temporary failure (想不起来) or an impulse.

一度	一时
a past period: 他一度住在国外	a moment: 一时生气
一年一度 (once a year)	一时半会儿 (in a short while)

一度: for a time · 一时: momentarily



7. 一直 vs 一向 (continuously vs habitually)

Form: 一直 + verb (continuously, past or future) · 一向 + predicate (habitually, past to now)

- **她一直在练琴，她一向很努力。** *Tā yìzhí zài liàn qín, tā yíxiàng hěn nǔlì.* – She's been practising the piano all morning; she's always been hard-working.
- **我会一直支持你。** – I'll always support you.
- **一直走，就到了。** – Go straight on and you're there.

How it works. 一直 *yìzhí* means without a break over a stretch of time, in the past or future; it also means "straight on". 一向 *yíxiàng* describes a long-standing habit or trait, from the past to now.

	一直	一向
ongoing activity (在 + verb)	一直在等	–
future promise	会一直等你	–
character trait	possible	一向很准时

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我会一向等你 → 我会一直等你.
- Both work for a lasting preference: 他一直 / 一向不喜欢吃辣.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 不得不 vs 只好 (forced to vs only option)

1. Complete: "I have to admit he was right." 我 …… 承认他说得对。

2. "The restaurant was full, so we just had to eat at home." Which sounds most natural?

- A. 饭馆满了，我们不得不吗在家吃。
- B. 饭馆满了，我们只好在家吃。

- C. 饭馆满了，只好我们在家吃了吗。
- D. 饭馆满了，我们得不得在家吃。

3. Build: “He was seriously ill and had to be hospitalised.”

Put in order: ， / 他病得很重 / 住院。/ 不得不

4. True or false? 只好 and 不得不 can sometimes be used interchangeably. If false, correct it.

5. The last train has been cancelled and there are no taxis. Use 不得不 or 只好. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 不断 vs 不停 (continually vs non-stop)

6. Complete (formal): “Our level keeps improving.” 我们的水平在 …… 提高。

7. Which is wrong?

- A. 技术不断进步。
- B. 他说个不断。
- C. 雨不停地下。
- D. 他说个不停。

8. Build: “The baby cries non-stop.”

Put in order: 不停。/ 孩子 / 个 / 哭

9. True or false? 不断的努力 means “constant effort”. If false, correct it.

10. A news report and a neighbour’s complaint describe two kinds of “continually”. Use 不断 or 不停. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 反而 vs 却 (instead vs however)

11. Complete: “After the medicine, the illness got worse instead.” 吃了药，病 …… 更重了。

12. “He’s clever, but he doesn’t work hard.” Which fits? 他很聪明，_____ 不努力。

- A. 于是
- B. 却
- C. 因此
- D. 反而

13. Build: “It’s already spring, yet it’s still cold.”

Put in order: ， / 天气却 / 已经春天了 / 还很冷。

14. True or false? 反而 normally goes after the subject, before the verb. If false, correct it.

15. You took a nap to feel better, but woke up even more tired. Use 反而 or 却. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 4. 根本 vs 到底 (at all vs on earth)

16. Complete: "I don't know him at all." 我 …… 不认识他。

17. "What on earth do you want?" Which fits? 你 _____ 想怎么样?

- A. 本来
- B. 根据
- C. 根本
- D. 到底

18. Build: "The root cause is a lack of communication."

Put in order: 是 / 根本原因 / 沟通。/ 缺少

19. True or false? 他到底还是来了 means "In the end he came after all." If false, correct it.

20. Your friend keeps changing his story about where he was last night. Use 根本 or 到底. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 居然 vs 反而 (surprisingly vs instead)

21. Complete: "She can actually speak Japanese!" 她 …… 会说日语!

22. "After a day of rest, he was even more tired." Which fits best? 休息了一天，他 _____ 更累了。

- A. 反而
- B. 居然
- C. 当然
- D. 果然

23. Build: "He actually got such an easy question wrong."

Put in order: 这么简单的题 / 居然 / 做错了。/ ，他

24. True or false? 反而 always reverses an expectation. If false, correct it.

25. Your shy classmate surprised everyone at the talent show. Use 居然 or 反而. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 一度 vs 一时 (at one time vs for the moment)

26. Complete: "I can't recall his name just now." 他的名字我 …… 想不起来。

27. "This song was once very popular." Which fits? 这首歌 _____ 非常流行。

- A. 一时
- B. 一度
- C. 一向
- D. 一直

28. Build: "This problem can't be solved in a short while."

Put in order: 解决 / 这个问题一时半会儿 / 不了。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

29. True or false? 一年一度 means "once a year". If false, correct it.

30. Your uncle talks about a difficult period in his life and a moment of panic. Use 一度 or 一时. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 一直 vs 一向 (continuously vs habitually)

31. Promise: "I'll always support you." 我会 …… 支持你。

32. Which is wrong?

- A. 他一向很准时。
- B. 我会一向等你。
- C. 雨一直在下。
- D. 他一直在练琴。

33. Build: "I will keep waiting for you."

Put in order: 一直 / 等你。/ 我会

34. True or false? 他一直不喜欢吃辣 and 他一向不喜欢吃辣 are both acceptable. If false, correct it.

35. Your neighbour has been practising piano all morning; she has always been hard-working. Use 一直 or 一向. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

36. Choose 一直 or 一向: 雨从早上 …… 下到现在。/ 他 …… 很节约。

37. Choose 根本 or 到底: 我 …… 不认识他。/ 你 …… 去不去?

38. Choose 反而 or 却: 他很努力，成绩 …… 不好。/ 吃了药，病 …… 更重了。

39. Choose 不得不 or 只好: 下大雨，比赛 …… 取消。(no other option left)

40. Find and fix the problem. A classmate says 一度 and 一时 both mean something lasted for many years. Correct it.

41. Use it yourself. Describe a result that went against expectations with 反而, then a simple contrast with 却.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 不得不 vs 只好 (forced to vs only option)

1. 不得不

不得不承认 is fixed.

2. B. 饭馆满了，我们只好在家吃。

Options ran out, so 只好 fits naturally.

3. 他病得很重，不得不住院。

Pressure of the situation = 不得不.

4. True.

不得不 just sounds more forced.

5. Model answer: 没有车了，我们只好走回去。公司规定要打卡，我不得不早起。

Check your answer:

- Options ran out and you accept it → 只好. Something forces you (law, health, duty) → 不得不.
- Both go after the subject: 我只好 …, 我不得不 …; neither takes 吗 in a statement.

■ 2. 不断 vs 不停 (continually vs non-stop)

6. 不断

Improvement over time = 不断.

7. B. 他说个不断。

Verb + 个 + 不停 means "non-stop" (他说个不停). 不断 does not fit this pattern; it works as an adverb before verbs like 进步 or 提高.

8. 孩子哭个不停。

V + 个不停.

9. True.

True. 不断 can also describe a noun with 的: 不断的努力 "constant effort".

10. Model answer: 城市在不断发展。楼上的狗叫个不停。

Check your answer:

- Development or improvement over time → 不断: 不断提高, not 不停提高.
- A physical action that won't stop → 不停: 雨不停地下, 说个不停.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 反而 vs 却 (instead vs however)

11. 反而

The opposite of the expected result = 反而.

12. B. 却

却 marks a plain contrast after the subject: 他很聪明，却不努力. 反而 would mean the result goes against what was expected, and 因此 / 于是 show result or sequence.

13. 已经春天了，天气却还很冷。

Subject + 却 + predicate.

14. True.

True. 反而 is an adverb: 他反而笑了.

15. Model answer: 我睡了一觉，却还是很累；不但没好，反而更累了。

Check your answer:

- A plain "but": 却. The opposite of the expected result: 反而.
- Both normally follow the subject: 他却 …, 他反而 ….

■ 4. 根本 vs 到底 (at all vs on earth)

16. 根本

根本 + 不 = not at all.

17. D. 到底

到底 strengthens questions.

18. 根本原因是缺少沟通。

根本 as an adjective: root.

19. True.

In statements, 到底 = after all.

20. Model answer: 你到底去哪儿了？我根本不相信你在图书馆。

Check your answer:

- 根本 strengthens a negative statement; it does not go in questions as "on earth": 你根本去哪儿了 ×.
- 到底 strengthens a question; it does not mean "not at all": for that, say 我根本不知道 – "I don't know at all."

■ 5. 居然 vs 反而 (surprisingly vs instead)

21. 居然

Surprise = 居然.

22. A. 反而

The opposite of the expected result = 反而.

23. 这么简单的题，他居然做错了。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Subject + 居然 + verb.

24. True.

True. 反而 always says the result goes against an expectation. 居然 only marks the speaker's surprise and does not need a reversal.

25. Model answer: 他居然上台唱了一首歌！大家以为他会紧张，他反而很放松。

Check your answer:

- Any surprise → 居然 / 竟然. A result opposite to the expected one → 反而.
- 居然 can describe good or bad surprises; 反而 always reverses an expectation.

■ 6. 一度 vs 一时 (at one time vs for the moment)

26. 一时

A brief moment = 一时.

27. B. 一度

一度 marks a past phase that has since ended: 这首歌一度非常流行 "was once very popular". 一直 and 一向 describe continuity up to now.

28. 这个问题一时半会儿解决不了。

Topic + 一时半会儿 + verb + potential complement 不了.

29. True.

True. In 一年一度, 度 counts occasions, so the phrase means "once a year", as in 一年一度的春节.

30. Model answer: 他一度失业，那时他一时不知道该怎么办。

Check your answer:

- A past period that has ended → 一度: 他一度住在国外 – "He lived abroad for a time."
- A brief moment or impulse → 一时: 一时生气说错了话 – "I said the wrong thing in a moment of anger."

■ 7. 一直 vs 一向 (continuously vs habitually)

31. 一直

Future promises take 一直.

32. B. 我会一向等你。

一向 does not look to the future.

33. 我会一直等你。

会 + 一直 + verb.

34. True.

For a long-standing preference, both work.

35. Model answer: 她一直在练琴，她一向很努力。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Check your answer:

- Future promises take 一直: 我会一直支持你 ("I will always support you"). 一向 is past-to-present only.
- An ongoing activity (在 + verb) usually takes 一直: 一直在等; 一向 is about habits and traits.

■ Mixed practice

36. 雨一直下到现在 (without stopping)。他一向很节约 (has always been, as a habit).

37. 我根本不认识他 (not at all)。你到底去不去? (on earth, demanding an answer).

38. 成绩却不好 (a simple contrast)。病反而更重了 (the opposite of what the medicine should do).

39. Both work: 只好取消 says it was the only option left; 不得不取消 stresses being forced by circumstances.

40. 一度 means "at one time in the past" (for a period that has ended). 一时 means "for a moment, for now". Neither says how many years.

41. Model answer. 我以为这次考试会很难，没想到反而很容易。他很努力，成绩却没有提高。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence each with 一直 and 一向.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar nouns

HSK 6

Two pairs of nouns for other people. 彼此 means “each other” (both sides), while 对方 means “the other side” (one person facing another). 别人 is a neutral “other people”; 人家 is colloquial and can also mean “he/she” or, playfully, “I”.

At a glance

- **1.** 彼此 vs 对方 – each other vs the other party: 双方应该彼此尊重，并且尊重对方的文化。
- **2.** 人家 vs 别人 – others – colloquial vs neutral: 别总拿人家跟你比。

1. 彼此 vs 对方 (each other vs the other party)

Form: both sides + 彼此 + verb · one side + verb + 对方 (的 …)

- **双方应该彼此尊重，并且尊重对方的文化。** *Bǐcǐ zūnzhòng … duìfāng de wénhuà.* – Both sides should respect each other and the other side’s culture.
- **我们彼此信任。** – We trust each other.
- **他不太了解对方的意见。** – He doesn’t really understand the other side’s view.
- A: **你辛苦了！** B: **彼此彼此。** – “You’ve worked hard!” “So have you.”

How it works. 彼此 *bǐcǐ* covers **both sides together**: a mutual action, like 互相. 对方 *duìfāng* points from one side to **the other party**. It can be subject or object, and takes 的 before a noun.

彼此	对方	互相
mutual; also a noun: 不分彼此	the other person or side	only before verbs

Watch out

- 彼此的意见 means both sides’ opinions; for the other side’s, say 对方的意见.



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. 人家 vs 别人 (others – colloquial vs neutral)

Form: 别人 (others, neutral) · 人家 (*rénjia*: others / he, she / playful "me")

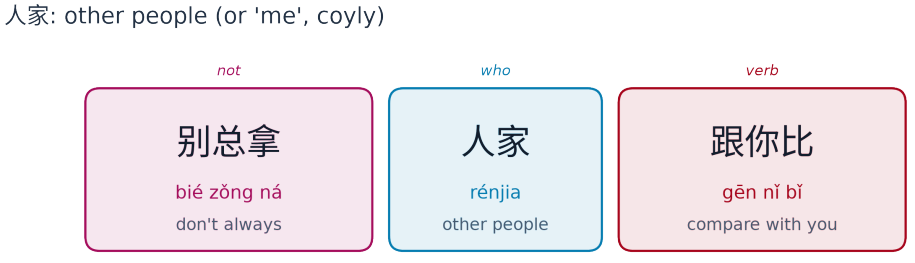
- **不要麻烦别人。** *Búyào máfan biérén.* – Don't trouble other people.
- **人家是专家，听他的吧。** – He's the expert; let's listen to him.
- **别总拿人家跟你比！人家也有自己的难处嘛。** – Stop comparing me with you! I have my own difficulties too.

How it works. 别人 means "other people" in general, neutral in any register. Colloquial 人家 can mean others, a specific third person (人家是专家), or, said playfully or coyly, the speaker: 人家不想去嘛！Context and tone decide which.

人家 *rénjia*	人家 *rénjiā*
others / he, she / me	household: 一百户人家

Watch out

- 人家 meaning "me" sounds coy: avoid it in formal or professional settings. In writing, use 别人 / 他人.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 彼此 vs 对方 (each other vs the other party)

1. Complete: "We trust each other." 我们 …… 信任。

2. "Listen to the other party's opinion." Which fits? 听听 _____ 的意见。

- A. 彼此
- B. 对方
- C. 互相
- D. 双方

3. Build: "You should listen to the other party's opinion."

Put in order: 对方的 / 听听 / 你应该 / 意见。

4. True or false? 彼此彼此 is a modest "same to you". If false, correct it.

5. Two companies sign a partnership agreement. Use 彼此 or 对方. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 人家 vs 别人 (others – colloquial vs neutral)

6. Complete (neutral): "Don't take other people's things." 不要拿 …… 的东西。

7. What does 人家不想去嘛！ usually mean when a girl says it to her boyfriend?

- A. I don't want to go! (playful)
- B. The household doesn't want to go.
- C. The expert doesn't want to go.
- D. Other people don't want to go.

8. Build: "He's an expert; listen to him."

Put in order: 人家是专家 / 听他的 / ， / 吧。

9. True or false? In 一百户人家, 人家 means "households". If false, correct it.

10. Your sister complains that you keep comparing her with yourself. Use 人家 or 别人. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Choose 彼此 or 对方: 我们 …… 帮助。/ 打电话时，…… 没有说话。

12. Choose 别人 or 人家: 不要随便拿 …… 的东西。(neutral)

13. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 我们对方帮助 for "we help each other". Correct it.

14. Use it yourself. Say two people respect each other, then report what the other side asked for.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 彼此 vs 对方 (each other vs the other party)

1. 彼此

Mutual action = 彼此.

2. B. 对方

One side looking at the other = 对方.

3. 你应该听听对方的意见。

对方 + 的 + noun.

4. True.

A reply when someone praises or thanks you.

5. Model answer: 双方应该彼此尊重，并且尊重对方的文化。

Check your answer:

- Mutual action, both together → 彼此 (or 互相). One side looking at the other → 对方.
- 彼此 is not used as a simple object after 的: 对方的意见, not 彼此的意见 for "the other's opinion" (彼此的意见 = both sides' opinions).

■ 2. 人家 vs 别人 (others – colloquial vs neutral)

6. 别人

Neutral "other people" = 别人.

7. A. I don't want to go! (playful)

人家 can playfully mean "I".

8. 人家是专家，听他的吧。

人家 = he / she (a specific person).

9. True.

True. Read rénjiā, 人家 means "household, family" and is counted with 户: 一百户人家. Read rénjia, it means "others" or "I".

10. Model answer: 别总拿人家跟你比。人家也有自己的难处嘛！

Check your answer:

- 人家 meaning "I" sounds coy or playful; avoid it in formal or professional settings.
- In writing, 别人 / 他人 are the neutral choices.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ Mixed practice

11. 我们彼此帮助 (each other)。对方没有说话 (the other person).

12. 不要随便拿别人的东西。别人 is the neutral choice; 人家 is more colloquial.

13. For each other, use 彼此: 我们彼此帮助 (or 我们互相帮助). 对方 means the other person or side.

14. Model answer. 他们彼此尊重。对方要求我们明天给答复。

Review later. Tomorrow, use 别人 and 人家 in one sentence each.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Say it aloud: argument, summary and formal presentation

HSK 6

Argue within the evidence

A library trial kept one reading room open an extra hour for a week. Attendance rose, but the report does not show whether people stayed longer or came from other rooms. Recommend a next step without turning a short trial into proof of a permanent effect.

试行期间，这间阅览室的到访人数增加了。不过，这并不能证明总学习时间也增加了。我建议继续试行，并记录使用时长，以便比较不同安排的效果。

During the trial, visits to this reading room increased. However, that does not prove that total study time also increased. I suggest continuing the trial and recording the duration of use so that different arrangements can be compared.

Choose the argumentative move

Move	Useful frame	Example
Reframe	与其说……不如说……	与其说已经成功，不如说值得继续观察。
Add a reason	何况……	还需要考虑费用，何况工作人员也需要休息。
Maintain a position under a condition	即使…… 也 ……	即使人数增加，也不能忽略成本。

The first frame replaces an interpretation, rather than comparing heights or prices. 何况 relies on an earlier consideration, which may come from another speaker's turn. Keep the condition and result clear in 即使 …… 也 ……; this paired frame is useful without claiming that every Mandarin concessive sentence must contain both words.

Make a concession count

诚然，延长开放时间可能方便部分读者；然而，是否长期实行，还需要比较成本和使用情况。 Admittedly, longer hours may help some readers; whether to make the change permanent still requires comparing costs and use.

A concession should acknowledge a real point. Follow it with a reasoned response, not an unrelated counterclaim. Possible benefit is not the same as measured benefit, and measured attendance is not automatically measured learning.

Summarise without adding a claim

Source: **试行一周后，到访人数增加，但使用时长尚未统计。** After a one-week trial, visits increased, but duration of use had not yet been counted.

Faithful summary: **一周试行后，到访人数上升，使用时长仍不清楚。**After a one-week trial, visits rose; duration of use remains unclear.

Unfaithful summary: **延长开放时间已经提高了学习效率。** Longer opening hours have already improved study efficiency. The source measured neither efficiency nor a long-term effect.

Select formal wording by meaning

因此 introduces a consequence; 此外 adds a point; 其次 introduces a further point in an ordered discussion. They are not interchangeable upgrades for every 所以, 还有 or 然后. 然后 may describe time order, whereas 其次 can order reasons. Formal language still needs clear subjects, supported claims and manageable sentence length.

Give a recommendation, acknowledge one limit and answer a challenge. Review content accuracy separately from grammar, fluency and pronunciation; a polished sentence can still overstate the evidence.

Practice

1. Choose the frame (与其说 …… 不如说 …… / 何况 / 即使 …… 也 ……): _ _ 成本增加，我们 _ _ 应该继续试行。
2. Reframe with 与其说 …… 不如说 ……: the trial has not succeeded yet; it deserves more observation.
3. Source: 新课程试行一个月，学生满意度提高，但考试成绩尚未比较。Which summary is faithful? A. 新课程已经提高了成绩。B. 一个月后满意度上升，成绩变化还不清楚。
4. Choose 因此, 此外 or 其次: 使用时长没有统计，_ _ 还不能证明效率提高了。
5. Write a concession with 诚然 ……；然而 …… about closing the library at weekends.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Find and fix the problem. A one-week trial showed more library visits, but nobody measured how long people stayed. A summary says study efficiency definitely improved. Correct the summary.

7. Use it yourself. Recommend a further measurement, admit one real limitation, and keep proposals separate from results.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ Practice answers

1. **即使**成本增加，我们**也**应该继续试行。The position holds under the condition.
2. **与其说试行已经成功，不如说值得继续观察。**
3. **B.** A claims a result the source did not measure.
4. **因此**: it introduces the consequence of the missing data.
5. For example: **诚然，周末关闭可以节省人手；然而，很多学生只有周末才有时间来图书馆，是否关闭还需要先调查使用情况。** The concession is real, and the reply answers it with a reason.

■ Mixed practice

6. The data show more visits only. Say 试用一周，到图书馆的人数增加了，但学习效率是否提高还不清楚, and suggest measuring it.

7. Model answer. 数据显示人数增加了。不过时间只有一周，样本也不大。我建议下个月记录学习时间，再做判断。

Review later. Tomorrow, summarise a short report in three sentences without adding anything new.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn